

## TURKISH

Geoffrey Lewis was born in London and educated at University College School and St John's College, Oxford. He has degrees from Oxford and an Honorary Doctorate of Bosphorus University, Istanbul. Originally a classicist, he fell in love with Turkish at the age of eighteen, when he chanced to leaf through an elementary grammar of the language. Since then he has spent his life mastering and teaching Turkish. He is a Fellow of the British Academy, Emeritus Professor of Turkish and Emeritus Fellow of St Antony's College in the University of Oxford, and a Corresponding Member of the Turkish Language Society. His other books include *Modern Turkey*, *Turkish Grammar*, and *The Book of Dede Korkut*.

An audio-cassette has been produced to accompany this course and is available separately via all good bookshops or, in case of difficulty, direct from the publishers.

For further details please write to the publishers at the address given on page iv, enclosing an SAE and quoting Teach Yourself Books (Dept. S/Cass.).

# TURKISH

Geoffrey Lewis

TEACH YOURSELF BOOKS  
Hodder and Stoughton

First published 1953  
Second edition 1989  
Fifth impression 1991

Copyright © 1953 and 1989  
Geoffrey Lewis

No part of this publication may be reproduced or transmitted in any form or by any means, electronically or mechanically, including photocopying, recording or any information storage or retrieval system, without either the prior permission in writing from the publisher or a licence, permitting restricted copying, issued by the Copyright Licensing Agency, 90 Tottenham Court Road, London W1P 9HE.

### British Library Cataloguing in Publication Data

Lewis, Geoffrey, 1920-  
Turkish.—2nd ed. (Teach Yourself books)  
I. Spoken Turkish language. Grammar  
I. Title II. Lewis, Geoffrey, 1920-  
Teach yourself Turkish  
494'.3583421  
ISBN 0 340 49231 7

Printed and bound in Great Britain  
for Hodder and Stoughton Educational,  
a division of Hodder and Stoughton Ltd,  
Mill Road, Dinton Green, Sevenoaks, Kent by  
Clays Ltd, St Ives plc  
Photoset by Cotswold Typesetting Ltd, Gloucester

## Contents

Introduction . . . . .	1
Sounds and Spelling . . . . .	4
Unit One . . . . .	17
1 Gender 2 The indefinite article 3 The plural suffix 4 The cases 5 The definite article 6 The absolute form 7 The definite objective case 8 The genitive case 9 The dative case 10 The locative case 11 The ablative case 12 Summary of case endings 13 Some models 14 Vowel length in loan-words 15 Word order	
Unit Two . . . . .	24
1 The verb 2 The verb <i>to be</i> , present tense 3 The verb <i>to be</i> , negative 4 The personal pronouns 5 The possessive suffixes 6 Uses of the possessive suffixes 7 The interrogative particle 8 Adjectives	
Unit Three . . . . .	33
1 Qualifying nouns 2 Place-names as qualifiers 3 Nouns of nationality as qualifiers 4 The verb, past tense 5 The verb <i>to be</i> , past and conditional 6 The verb, negative 7 <i>To have</i> ; var, yok 8 The suffix <i>-li</i> 9 The suffix <i>-siz</i>	
Unit Four . . . . .	42
1 The verb, present, present-past and present conditional 2 The present and present-past, negative 3 The present and present-past, interrogative 4 Cardinal numerals 5 Demonstratives 6 Postpositions with absolute or genitive case 7 Translation of and 8 Adverbs	

<b>Unit Five</b> . . . . .	52
1 <i>Here, there, where?</i> 2 The suffix <b>-ki</b> 3 Comparison of adjectives and adverbs 4 Intensive adjectives 5 Uses of the ablative case 6 Postpositions with the ablative 7 The verb, future, future-past and future conditional 8 Compound verbs 9 <i>It's raining</i> 10 Ordinal numerals 11 Fractions 12 <i>One each</i>	
<b>Unit Six</b> . . . . .	64
1 The verb, aorist 2 The verb, aorist negative 3 Uses of the aorist 4 <i>While</i> 5 <i>As soon as</i> 6 The suffix <b>-ci</b> 7 The suffix <b>-ilk</b> 8 Uses of the dative case 9 Postpositions with the dative 10 Verbs, transitive and intransitive 11 Months of the year	
Dialogue: <i>Asking the way</i> . . . . .	72
<b>Unit Seven</b> . . . . .	73
1 Participles and verbal nouns 2 Present participle 3 Perfect participle 4 Future and aorist participles 5 Uses of the participles 6 Interrogatives 7 Postpositional expressions 8 The verb, imperative	
Dialogue: <i>At the post office</i> . . . . .	81
<b>Unit Eight</b> . . . . .	82
1 The verbal noun 2 Uses of the verbal noun 3 Indefinite pronouns and adjectives 4 <i>Self</i> 5 Telling the time 6 The <b>imniş</b> form of the verb <i>to be</i> 7 The <b>-miş</b> tense of other verbs 8 <i>Buyurun!</i>	
Reading: <i>Is Islam incompatible with progress?</i> . . . . .	91
<b>Unit Nine</b> . . . . .	92
1 The verb, pluperfect 2 The verb, perfect conditional 3 The verb, passive and reflexive 4 Uses of the passive 5 Money, weights and measures 6 <i>A glass of water</i> 7 Uses of the locative case 8 Adverbs of place 9 The postposition <b>üzere</b>	
Reading: <i>Two stories of Nasreddin Hoca</i> . . . . .	99
<b>Unit Ten</b> . . . . .	101
1 The personal participles 2 The personal participle as a noun 3 Negative sentences 4 Translation of <i>can</i> 5 Translation of	
<i>cannot</i> 6 Adverbial forms of the verb 7 The reciprocal or cooperative verb	
Reading: <i>Some simple science</i> . . . . .	109
<b>Unit Eleven</b> . . . . .	111
1 The verb, causative 2 Uses of the causative 3 Uses of <b>demek</b> 4 Translation of <i>must</i> 5 Translation of <i>so-and-so</i> 6 The suffix <b>-ip</b> 7 Conditional sentences, open and remote 8 Conditional sentences, unfulfilled	
Reading: <i>Two more stories of Nasreddin Hoca</i> . . . . .	121
<b>Unit Twelve</b> . . . . .	123
1 <i>Whoever, whatever</i> 2 More about conditionals 3 The subjunctive 4 The conjunction <b>ki</b> 5 Points of the compass 6 Formation of verbs 7 More adverbial forms of the verb	
Reading: <i>Side effects of dam-building</i> . . . . .	132
<b>Unit Thirteen</b> . . . . .	134
1 Adverbs of time 2 <b>Bir</b> 3 The possessive suffix of the third person 4 More adverbs, conjunctions and particles 5 The suffix <b>-das</b> 6 The suffix <b>-esi</b> 7 Diminutives 8 The suffix <b>-(y)ici</b>	
Reading: <i>Thought of going by bus?</i> . . . . .	142
<b>Unit Fourteen</b> . . . . .	144
1 Modes of address 2 The Arabic and Persian element in Turkish 3 The suffix <b>-sel</b> 4 Compound nouns 5 Formation of nouns and adjectives	
Reading: <i>On the utility of political parties</i> . . . . .	151
<b>Unit Fifteen</b> . . . . .	153
1 Notes on certain verbs 2 Greetings and polite expressions 3 Doublets 4 The verb, summary of tenses	
Reading: <i>Compulsory Ottoman?</i> . . . . .	160
<b>Dialogues</b> . . . . .	162
<b>Key to the Exercises</b> . . . . .	169
<b>List of Essential Verbs</b> . . . . .	184



**Turkish-English Vocabulary . . . . . 186**

**Index . . . . . 203**



## Introduction

Turkish, the language of the Republic of Turkey, is a member of the Turkic family of languages, spoken by well over a hundred million people, from south-east Europe to the upper reaches of the Yenisei and into China; one of every six Soviet citizens speaks a Turkic language. The nineteenth-century Ural-Altai theory, which saw Turkic as related to Hungarian and Finnish, has been abandoned by most scholars. Some even question the relationship with Mongolian, once taken for granted. There are those who see resemblances between Turkic and Korean, but the case is far from proved.

The languages of the Turkic family do not differ among themselves anything like as much as the members of our branch of the Indo-European family. English, Dutch and Norwegian are closely related, but this fact would be of small comfort to a Londoner or New Yorker lost in the back streets of Groningen or Hammerfest with no obliging anglophone in sight. On the other hand, if you have mastered the contents of this book you will find little difficulty in making yourself understood in Tabriz, in Samarkand or Chinese Turkestan. True, you may at first have difficulty in understanding the inhabitants' replies, but they will know what you are talking about.

Those who require a knowledge of Turkish for professional purposes or in order to get more out of a holiday in Turkey will need no persuasion to awaken their interest. However, there is a reason of another sort for learning the language. While the structure of Turkish is simple and logical (only one verb is anomalous and only one noun is irregular), it is quite different from that of the Indo-European or the Semitic languages. Anyone interested in language should enjoy seeing how Turkish-speakers clothe the ordinary human thoughts and feelings in a completely new garb. Take this sentence: *The hotel where we are going to stay is at the end of this street.* The shape remains the same if it is translated into French, Russian, Greek, or even Arabic.

but in Turkish it becomes: 'Stay-future-our hotel, this street's end-it-at-is.'

Turkish is an agglutinating language. It has nothing like our *foot/feet* or *come/came*. The Turkish word consists of an unchanging root to which may be attached one or more suffixes, each adding one idea to that of the root. The resulting word may convey the sense of an English phrase or sentence: *bilgi knowledge; bilgisiz without knowledge; bilgisizlik lack of knowledge; bilgisizlikleri their lack of knowledge; bilgisizliklerinden from their lack of knowledge; bilgisizliklerindennis I gather that it was from their lack of knowledge*. Although the beginner may require several months of practice before he can agglutinate freely in conversation, he will find ample compensation in the ease with which the suffixes enable him to build new words from the roots he already knows.

Until 1928, Turkish was written in the Arabic alphabet, which was unsuited to representing the sounds of Turkish. Thus the Arabic equivalents of the letters k-w-r-k stood for at least eight completely different words, six of which are still in use, written *kürk, kirek, gevrek, görün, körik* and *körün*, and meaning respectively *fur, oat, crisp, see, bellows* and *blind man's*. The need for a reform had long been discussed, but it took the enlightened despotism of Mustafa Kemal to introduce the Latin alphabet to Turkey and to outlaw the old Arabic script from public life. That was in 1928. The following year, Arabic and Persian ceased to be part of the school curriculum. At the same time, official support was given to the language reform movement, aimed at ridding the Turkish vocabulary of the numerous Arabic and Persian words which it had adopted over the centuries and replacing them with 'genuine Turkish' words, some resurrected from old texts, some imported from other Turkic languages, some constructed on the analogy of existing words, but a great many simply taken into the written language from the spoken language.

It is easy to poke fun at this policy and at some of its consequences, but in its defence it must be said that the immense gulf which existed in the Ottoman Empire, between the language of the educated few and the language of the people, was felt to be intolerable in a republic. Sadly, the 'language reform' has created a new gulf, between those who have embraced the neologisms and those – mainly peasants and artisans – who have been slower to abandon their familiar modes of speech. Nevertheless, most of the new words are here to stay. There is

no future in adopting the ostrich-attitude and saying, '*Okul school* is a ridiculous hybrid, out of the Turkish *oku- to read* by the French *école*. We shall ignore it and continue to use the good old Ottoman word *mektep*.' Turkish children have been going to *okul* for half a century now, not to *mektep*. Some further remarks on the language reform will be found in Unit Fourteen.

In the vocabularies, when two Turkish equivalents are given for one English word (e.g. *önemli, mühim important*), the first of the two is the one appearing in the exercise. Literal translations of Turkish examples are shown between quotation marks, the translations into normal English being in *italic*.

The student is strongly advised that the way to a mastery of the language lies in never quitting a Turkish sentence without having fully understood the function of every single letter. The suffixes are not ornaments which Turks whimsically hang onto their words; they are vital. If, having learned that *saray* means *palace*, you see a phrase like *Topkapı Sarayı Topkapı Palace*, and do not take the trouble to work out why *Saray* has been given that final *i*, you will not get much further in Turkish than a foreigner would in English who did not bother to ascertain the meanings of our tiresome little monosyllables like *to, from, in, out* and *not*.

At the end of each of the first five units there are sentences for translation into and from Turkish, keys being provided at the end of the book. As a pedagogical device, this may strike the student as somewhat dated, but it is still the best way of inculcating the rudiments of a language, especially one so remote in structure and vocabulary from one's own. Unit Six has Turkish sentences for translation and a passage of dialogue, while Unit Seven has another. The eight subsequent units contain reading passages on a variety of topics, with explanatory notes. Nine further dialogues will be found after Unit Fifteen. By the time that point has been reached, the reader should have a fair understanding of all the mechanisms of the language. After the dialogues there is a list of essential verbs, and it is recommended that the student should start memorising these as soon as possible.

I would like to express my indebtedness to my wife for her unflinching encouragement; this revision was her idea, just as the original edition was. My warm thanks are due also to Sinan and Arın Bayraktaroğlu and Emine Gürsoy-Naskali.

## Sounds and Spelling

### The alphabet

The Turkish alphabet is made up of eight vowels and twenty-one consonants. For quick reference, a rough guide to pronunciation is given against each letter which is not used in English or has different values in English and Turkish. These indications are supplemented by the more detailed notes which follow.

In the table accompanying the law of 1928 which introduced the new letters, *I* preceded *I*. By convention, however, it now generally follows it.

Letter	Name	Approximate pronunciation
A a	a	a in northern English <i>man</i> , French <i>avoir</i>
B b	be	
C c	ce	j in <i>jam</i>
Ç ç	çe	ch in <i>church</i>
D d	de	
E e	e	e in <i>bed</i>
F f	fe	
G g	ge	g in <i>goat</i> or <i>angular</i>
Ğ ğ	yumuşak ge (soft g)	Sometimes lengthens preceding vowel, sometimes pronounced like y in <i>yet</i>
H h	he	h in <i>house</i>
İ i	i	i in <i>cousin</i>
İ i	i	i in <i>pit</i>
J j	je	j in French <i>jour</i> , s in <i>treasure</i>
K k	ke	k in <i>key</i> or c in <i>cure</i>
L l	le	

M m	me	
N n	ne	
O o	o	o in <i>hot</i> or French <i>o</i> in <i>note</i>
Ö ö	ö	German <i>ö</i> in <i>König</i> , French <i>eu</i> in <i>peur</i>
P p	pe	r in <i>ribbon</i>
R r	re	s in <i>sing</i>
S s	se	sh in <i>shall</i>
Ş ş	şe	t in <i>take</i>
T t	te	u in <i>push</i>
U u	u	German <i>ü</i> in <i>Führer</i> , French <i>u</i> in <i>tu</i>
Ü ü	ü	
V v	ve	
Y y	ye	y in <i>yet</i> (not in <i>sorry</i> )
Z z	ze	

### Pronunciation

The following notes are intended to help the student to attain an intelligible pronunciation in the absence of a native teacher. A minimum of phonetic symbols has been used in the descriptions of the sounds, so that the reader who knows nothing of phonetics will not be at a disadvantage.

#### Vowels

##### Vowel length

As a rule, Turkish vowels are short; i, for example, ordinarily has the sound heard in English *bit* (/i/), not that heard in *machine* (/i:/).

The exceptions are that short vowels may be lengthened, as we shall see, by a following *ğ* or *y*, and that in some Arabic and Persian loan-words an original long vowel is retained.

##### Classification of vowels

The differences between vowels are largely differences in tongue-position. Vowels may be front or back, the former pronounced with the middle of the tongue raised towards the highest part of the palate, the latter with the back of the tongue raised towards the back of the palate. According to the amount of this raising, vowels are described as high, higher-mid, lower-mid, or low. Another distinction is

between rounded and unrounded vowels, depending on whether or not the sound is produced with rounded, protruded lips. You can forget these terms once you have grasped the principle of vowel harmony (see pp. 11–13).

**1 a** Usually represents the low unrounded back vowel /ɑ/, much the same as the *a* in northern English *man* or French *avoir*. For readers unacquainted with either, the *u* of southern English *gun* is close enough. When long, it is pronounced like *a* in *father*. See also note 9 on p. 7. Examples: *yasak forbidden*, *adam man*, *âdil /a: dil/ just*.

In some words, mostly of non-Turkish origin, *a* represents the low unrounded front vowel /a/, much as in *car: anne /anne/ mother, lazım /la: zım/ necessary*.

**2 e** Usually the lower-mid front vowel /ɛ/, much as in *met: evet yes, ben I*. Sometimes, notably when lengthened, it represents the higher-mid front /e/, the French *é*, the vowel of *they* but without the final *i*-glide: *teyze /te: ze/ maternal aunt, tesir /te: sir/ effect*.

**3 i** The high unrounded intermediate vowel /i/, like the *i* in *cousin* and *Cyril*. Spread your lips as if to say *easy* but say *cushion* instead; the result will be very close to the Turkish *kışın in winter*. Examples: *kari wife, rüküm quay, kubbük hen-pecked husband, kapıda at the door*.

**4 i** The low unrounded front vowel /i/ as in *pit or*, when long, as in *machine: ip thread, bir one*.

*i* may be lengthened by a following *ğ* or *y*. In Arabic or Persian borrowings, long *i* may be found written as *î*, though the growing practice is to write it as *i*. Examples: *igne needle, görevliken while on duty, tarihî historical*.

**5 o** Usually represents the higher-mid rounded back vowel /o/, as in the French *note*. When lengthened, it is like *aw* in *awful*. In some borrowed words beginning with *n* or *l*, it is like *o* in *hor: on ten, ot grass, oğlan /o: lan/ boy, nokta point, Londra London*.

**6 ö** The lower-mid front vowel /œ/, like German *ö* in *Köln*, French *eu* in *peur*. The vowel in English *fur* is not too far off: *ömür life, ördek duck*.

**7 u** Generally represents the high rounded back vowel /ɔ/ as in *push*, with the lips rounded and parted. After an initial *l* or *n* it is pronounced /u/, similar to but shorter than the *oo* in *loom*. Examples: *upuzun very long, numara /numara/ number, nutuk /nutuk/ speech*.

**8 ü** The high rounded front vowel /y/, the German *ü* in *Führer*, French *u* in *tu*. If you round your lips as if to say *open* and then say *itch*, you will be saying the Turkish *üç three*. Examples: *güzel beautiful, üzülüm I was upset*.

**9 â, û, aa** When it is necessary to indicate long vowels in Arabic or Persian borrowings, the circumflex accent is used: *adet number* but *âdet custom; hala paternal aunt* but *hâlâ yet*. As will be explained in note 6, p. 8 and note 11, p. 9, it may be found over *a* and *u* to show that a preceding *g*, *k* or *l* is palatalised.

The circumflex, therefore, cannot be used when an *a* has to be marked long after a non-palatalised *g* or *k* (it so happens that this is never necessary after *l* or with any vowel but *a*). Instead, the length of the *a* is shown by writing it twice. With the steady reduction of the Arabic and Persian component of the Turkish vocabulary, the only common example nowadays is *katil murderer*, as distinct from *katil murder*. The language reformers, hoping that such borrowings will soon be forgotten anyway, recommend writing both as *katil*.

### Consonants

#### 1 b, p

They are not so heavily aspirated as in English; that is to say, they are produced with less emission of breath than is heard, for example, at the beginning of *poppycock!* Examples: *baba father, pazar market*.

#### 2 c

Exactly like *j* in *jam: cep pocket, Macaristan Hungary*.

3 ğ Exactly like *ch* in *church*: *çekiç hammer*, *çocuk child*, *Çekoslovakya Czechoslovakia*.

4 d, t

In English they are produced with the tongue touching the gums behind the top teeth. In Turkish they are produced with the tongue touching the top teeth and so are more distinct than in English. Examples: *deniz sea*, *Türk Turk*.

5 f, v

These are weaker than in English; indeed, *v* is often pronounced as weakly as English *w*, especially when it occurs between *u* and *a*. A good example is the word for *lavatory* – *tuvalet*, which is pronounced like the French *toilette* from which it is borrowed. Examples: *yuva nest*, *kavun melon*, *vefa fidelity*.

6 g, k

Before or after a back vowel (*a*, *ı*, *o*, *u*), *g* and *k* have the sounds heard at the beginning of *go* and *come* respectively: *gazete newspaper*, *kız girl*.

Before or after a front vowel (*e*, *i*, *ö*, *ü*), they are palatalised; that is, they are followed by a *y*-sound, like *g* and *c* in *angular*, *cure*: *göz /gjoz/ eye*, *kürek /kyrek/ oar*.

In some Arabic and Persian borrowings, *g* and *k* are also palatalised before *a* and *u*, which are then written *â*, *û*: *kâr /kja:r/ profit*, *mezâr /mezjur / aforesmentioned*, *gâvur /gjavur/ infidel*, *Giaour*. Despite the recent trend towards dispensing with the circumflex accent altogether after *l* (see note 11 on p. 9), it is still used after *g* and *k*, as being the only way (apart from context) of distinguishing between, for example, *kâr profit* and *kar snow*.

When a vowel is added to a word ending in *k* preceded by a vowel, the *k* is usually softened to *ğ*: *bıçak knife* + *-im my* becomes *biçaiım my knife*.

7 ğ

Never occurs at the beginning of a word. At the end of a word or when followed by a consonant, it lengthens the preceding vowel: *dağ /da:/ mountain*, *ağda /a:dda/ in the net*.

When *ğ* comes between two back vowels, the first is lengthened and the second is lost or nearly lost, unless one of the vowels is *u*, when

both are pronounced and the *ğ* may be heard as a faint /w/: *uğur /u:r/ luck*, *dağın /da:n/ of the mountain*, *soğuk /sowk/ or /so:k/ or /so:k/ cold*.

When *ğ* comes between two front vowels, it is heard as a faint *y*-sound, as in *payın: çiger liver*, *eğre file*.

In a few words, notably *dövmek to bear* and *övmek to praise*, the *v* is sometimes replaced by *ğ* in writing but not in pronunciation.

8 h

Turkish *h* is not treated like the *h* in *hour*, *honour* or *dahlia*: it is clearly pronounced, except in the male name *Mehmet*, where there is a compensatory lengthening of the preceding vowel /me:met/.

Each letter in the combinations *ph*, *sh* and *th* must be pronounced separately. Thus the *ph* in *süphe (doubt)* is pronounced as in *slap-happy*, not as in *graph*; the *sh* in the name *İshak* as in *mishap*, not *wish*; the *th* in *müthlis (terrible)* as in *pit-head*, not *pith*.

9 j

As in French *jour*, English *s* in *treasure*. It occurs only in borrowings from French and Persian: *jandarma gendarmarie*, *müjde good news*.

10 k

See note 6 on p. 8.

11 l

In Turkish, as in English, *l* represents two different sounds, the 'clear *l*' /l/ of *least* and the 'dark *l*' /l/ of *told*, *wool*. With front vowels *l* is clear, with back vowels it is dark. The distinction comes automatically to English-speakers.

Clear *l*: *süsli ornate*, *çöl desert*, *geldi it came*.

Dark *l*: *yıl year*, *kol arm*, *pul postage stamp*.

In Arabic and French borrowings, however, clear *l* may occur even in conjunction with *a* or *u*. Until the mid-1970s, the rule in such cases was to write not *a* or *u* but *â* or *û*: *malım known*, *plajı beach*. It was then recommended that the circumflex should be retained only in such time-honoured Turkish place-names as *Lâpecki* and *İslâhiye* and in borrowings from Arabic, though not from French – so *malım* but *plajı*. More and more Turks now omit it altogether.

12 m

Exactly as in English: *anlayamadım I have failed to understand*.

10 *Turkish*

13 *n*  
Much like English *n*, to which it bears the same relation as *do d* and *t* to their English counterparts: *nerede where? niçin why?*

14 *p*  
See note 1, p. 7.

15 *r*  
Turkish *r* is pronounced with the tip of the tongue touching the ridge of gum behind the top teeth. Unlike English *r*, it is pronounced wherever it occurs; compare English *car* /kɑ:/ with Turkish *kar* /kɑr/ *snow*. Examples: *arı bee, yazar writer*.

16 *s*  
Always as in *this*, never as in *these*: *sus be silent, sinsi stealthy*.

17 *ş*  
English *sh* in *shall*: *şimşek lightning, Şeykspir Shakespeare*.

18 *t*  
See note 4, p. 8.

19 *v*  
See note 5, p. 8.

20 *y*  
Initially or after a consonant, like *y* in *yer*: *yağ oil, Asya Asia*.  
Between vowels or after a vowel in the same syllable it is much weaker, like *y* in *paying*: *ayı bear, cumhuriyet republic, şey thing, uygun suitable*.

When *y* comes between a front vowel and a consonant, the vowel is lengthened: *elyle /eli:le/ with his hand*.

21 *z*  
As in English: *zeytin /ze:tin/ olive, buz ice*.

*The glottal stop*

The sounds of Arabic include a throaty gulp (*'ayn*) and a glottal stop (*hamza*), which is the sound heard in place of the *t* in the Cockney pronunciation of *bottle*. In Arabic words borrowed into Turkish, these were pronounced alike as a glottal stop, which during the early years of the new Turkish alphabet was indicated by an apostrophe: *san'at art, mesele problem*. But the glottal stop does not come

naturally to Turks and nowadays it is omitted both in speech and in writing: *sanat, mesele*. It is retained only in the very rare instances when its omission might cause confusion between a native word and an Arabic borrowing: *kuran founding* but *Kur'an the Koran*; *telin of the wire* but *tel'in denunciation*.

*Doubled consonants*

These represent not two sounds but one, on which the speaker dwells longer than on a single consonant. Compare the *pp* in *lamp-post*. Distinguish carefully between *eli his hand* and *elli fifty*; *kati hard* and *katti he added*. See also note 4 on p. 14.

*Vowel harmony*

The principle of vowel harmony pervades Turkish grammar and word-formation. Vowels are classified as back or front, high or low, rounded or unrounded (pp. 5-6), as shown in the table below. A good example of the power of vowel harmony is afforded by the word *öbür the other*. It was once *o bir that one*, but the *o* rounded the *i* into *ü*, while the *i* fronted the *o* into *ö*.

	Unrounded		Rounded	
	Low	High	Low	High
Back	a	i	o	u
Front	e	ı	ö	ü

*General law of vowel harmony*

If the vowel of the first syllable of a word is a back vowel, so too are the vowels of subsequent syllables. Examples: *dokuz nine, doksan ninety, sunularımız our frontiers, ölmadılar they did not become*.

If the vowel of the first syllable is a front vowel, so too are the vowels of subsequent syllables. Examples: *sekiz eight, seksen eighty, sinirlerimiz our nerves, ölmediler they did not die*.

*Exceptions:*

(a) A small number of native Turkish words, the commonest being *anne mother, kardeş brother or sister, inanamak to believe, şişman fat, hangi which? and elma apple*.

(b) Eight invariable suffixes: *-daş, -yor, -ken, -leyin, -mtrak, -ki, -gil* and *-gen*.

(c) Compound words such as *bugün today*, made up of *bu this* and *gün day*; *bilgisayar computer*, from *bilgi information* and *sayar counter, lister*.

(d) Foreign borrowings. Vowel harmony frequently affects these also. The football term *penalty* appears in Turkish as *penaltı*, the original final *i* having been changed to the back vowel *ı* by the influence of the preceding back vowel *a*. The standard Turkish for *bus* is *otobüs*, a phonetic spelling of the French *autobus*, but as the front *ü* does not come naturally after the two back *os*, the pronunciations *otobos* and *ötöbüs* are often heard.

#### Special law of vowel harmony

- 1 Unrounded vowels are followed by unrounded vowels.
- 2 Rounded vowels are followed by low unrounded or high rounded vowels.

Combining the general and the special laws, we arrive at the following:

a is followed by a or ı  
 e is followed by e or i  
 ı is followed by ı or a  
 i is followed by i or e  
 o is followed by a or u  
 ö is followed by ü or e  
 u is followed by u or a  
 ü is followed by ü or e

Exception: a may be followed by u if b, p, m, or v intervenes.  
 Examples: *tapu title-deed*, *avuç hollow of the hand*, *abuk sabuk nonsensical*, *gannur mud*. It will be seen that o and ö occur as a rule only in first syllables.

#### Vowel harmony of suffixes

It follows that Turkish suffixes, apart from the exceptions noted on p. 11, have a chameleon-like quality, their vowels changing to match the vowel of the last syllable of the word to which they are attached. They fall into two groups. The vowels of the first group are low unrounded; the vowels of the second group are high unrounded or high rounded. To put it more simply, some suffixes may appear with e or a, while others may have i, ü, ı or u. Thus the suffix of the dative

case, denoting *to*, is the appropriate unrounded low vowel; it takes the form of *-e* after front vowels and *-a* after back vowels. On the other hand, the suffix of the genitive case, denoting *of*, is the appropriate high vowel followed by *n*: *-in, -ün, -ın* or *-ün*:

<i>ev house</i>	<i>eye to the house</i>	<i>evin of the house</i>
<i>otobüs bus</i>	<i>otobüse to the bus</i>	<i>otobüsün of the bus</i>
<i>orman forest</i>	<i>ormana to the forest</i>	<i>ormann of the forest</i>
<i>okul school</i>	<i>okula to school</i>	<i>okulun of the school</i>

To save space, dictionaries show suffixes of the first group only in the forms with *e* and those of the second group only in the forms with *i*. So if one learns that *to enter* is *-e girilmek*, one must make the necessary adjustment; *to enter the house* is *ev girilmek* but *to enter the forest* is *ormana girilmek*. Similarly, if told that *we are* is a suffixed *-iz*, one must interpret that as *'-iz, -üz, -ız* or *-üz*, according to the nature of the preceding vowel.

#### Exceptional vowel harmony

There are some foreign borrowings whose last syllables contain a back vowel yet which take front-vowel suffixes: *saat hour, clock, saatin of the clock, rol role, rolün of the role, gol goal, golün of the goal*. Such words are shown thus: *saat (-ti)*.

#### Changes in consonants

1 Hardly any native Turkish words end in the voiced consonants *b, c, d, or g* and when these sounds occur at the end of foreign borrowings they change to the corresponding unvoiced *p, ç, t, or k*. Thus the Arabic *kitāb* becomes *kitap book* in Turkish and the male name *Ahmed* becomes *Ahmet*. The French *garde-robe* appears as *gardrop wardrobe, cloakroom*, the Persian *rang* as *renk colour*, the English *bridge* (the card game) as *bric*. A few pedants prefer the spellings *kitab, Ahmed, gardrob, bric*, though this does not affect their pronunciation.

2 When a vowel is added to some nouns of one syllable and most nouns of more than one syllable, ending in *p, ç, t, or k*, the final consonant changes to *b, c, d, or ğ* respectively. So with the suffix of the third person, *-i* (see p. 27):

*kitap book*      *kitabı his/her/its book*



<i>agac</i> tree	<i>agaci</i> his/her/its tree
<i>armut</i> pear	<i>armudu</i> his/her/its pear
<i>ayak</i> foot	<i>ayagi</i> his/her/its foot

Nouns whose final consonants are *not* subject to this change will be shown in the vocabularies thus: renk (-gi) colour, et (-ti) meat. This means that the k of renk becomes g before a vowel, whereas the t of et is retained. The change is less frequent in verbs. Consequently, verbs which *are* subject to this change will be shown thus: etmek (ed-) to do. Verbs not so shown do not change the final consonant of their stem.

3 If a suffix beginning with c, d, or g is added to a word ending in an unvoiced consonant (ç, f, h, k, p, s, ş or t), the initial c, d or g of the suffix is unvoiced to ç, t or k. For example, the suffix -dir/-dür/-dir/-dür means is.

<i>etdir</i> it is his meat	<i>etir</i> it is the meat
<i>otobüsüdür</i> it is his bus	<i>otobüstür</i> it is the bus
<i>kitabdır</i> it is his book	<i>kitaptır</i> it is the book
<i>armadudur</i> it is his pear	<i>armuttur</i> it is the pear

4 Doubled consonants at the end of Arabic borrowings are reduced to single consonants in Turkish. The Arabic *haqq* appears as *hak* right, but when a vowel is added the doubled consonant is preserved: *hakki* her right. Such words will be shown thus: *hak* (-kki).

5 Native words do not begin with two consonants and there is a tendency to separate two consonants at the beginning of foreign words. So *train* was first borrowed as *tren*, *club* as *kulüp*. These pronunciations persist, but the modern practice is not to show them in spelling, so *tren*, *küp*. The word for *cargo boat*, however, *şilep* (the German *Schlepp*), retains its old spelling. Some other old borrowings add an initial vowel, usually i, to avoid starting a word with two consonants: *iskelet* skeleton, *istimbot* small steam-boat.

6 There are some twenty words of two syllables in which the vowel of the second syllable is lost when a suffix beginning with a vowel is added: *oğul* son, *oğlu* her son; *burun* nose, *burnu* his nose. Words of this class will be shown thus: *oğul* (-ğlu). See the example *fikir* in 1.13. *Şehir* city used to be of this class but the modern tendency is to retain the i.

7 Arabic borrowings originally ending in the consonant 'ayn (see p. 10) are now usually treated as ending in a vowel. The example in commonest use is *camii* mosque (the Arabic *jāmi'*). The possessive suffix of the third person is -i after a consonant, -si after a vowel. For *his mosque*, once *camii* or *camii*, most Turks now say and many now write *camisi*.

#### Accentuation

No two grammarians and perhaps no two Turks will agree on all matters of accentuation, chiefly because the accent in Turkish is elusively light. The following assertions, however, are not likely to be challenged.

In general the accent falls on the final syllable of the word, as in French: *kardes* brother, *kardesler* brothers, *kardesleri* her brothers, *kardeslerinden* from her brothers.

The exceptions are:

- (a) Place names are never accented on the final syllable: Ankara, İstanbul, Paris. Ordu is the name of a Black Sea port, whereas *ordu* means *army*. With the growing popularity of the charming seaside resort of *Kuşadası*, it is to be hoped that travel agents abroad will stop inflecting their clients with the excruciating pronunciation which makes the last two syllables sound like *D'Arcy*. The accented syllable in place names retains the accent even when suffixes are added: Ankara'da in *Ankara*, İstanbul'a to *İstanbul*, Paris'ten from *Paris*.
- (b) Adverbs are never accented on the final syllable: *yalnız* only, *burada* here, *şimdi* now. The suffixed forms of the verb *to be* are never accented. Nor are certain other suffixes which will be mentioned as they occur.
- (c) There is a strong accent on the syllable before the negative suffix -me: *bekledim* I waited, *beklemedim* I did not wait. There is an even stronger accent before the interrogative particle *mi*: *bekledim mi?* did I wait? This is so strong as to override the accent before the negative suffix: *beklemedim mi?* didn't I wait?
- (d) Compound nouns are accented on the last syllable of their first element: *deniz* sea, *altı* its-underside, *denizaltı* submarine; *kara* black, *yel* wind, *Karayel* north-west wind; *baş* head, *bakan* minister, *başbakan* prime minister.

**Punctuation**

(a) It is usual to put a comma after the subject, especially when it comes at or near the beginning of a long sentence. A comma is often used where we would expect a semicolon. Three dots ( . . . ) are often used to show that a thought has not been completely expressed. Frequent also is the use of (!) and (?) to indicate that a remark is meant ironically.

(b) Reported speech is not always enclosed in quotation marks. Even when it is, the part of the verb *to say* (*dedi* in the following example) is often included: "Yarın gelirim, dedi, o zaman konusuruz." 'I'll come tomorrow,' he said, 'we'll talk then.' When the part of *to say* follows a quotation it is often given a capital letter; this can be confusing, especially in the absence of quotation marks: *Bu olamaz! Diyor. 'This cannot be!' he is saying.* When quotation marks are used, they are almost always double not single.

(c) The apostrophe, besides representing the glottal stop (pp. 10-11), is used to separate names, particularly foreign names, from any suffixes that may be attached to them, to make it clear how much is name and how much is suffix: *London'ya to London, Sanghay'a to Shanghai, Bağdat'a to Baghdad, Uganda'da in Uganda.*

It is also used before the suffixes of common nouns and pronouns to emphasise the word, e.g. *En meşhur futbolcumuz, O'dur He is our most famous footballer.* The capitalisation of the pronoun *o he/she* in such sentences does not indicate a deification of the person in question, since it is not done when referring to Allah.

If a word or name with an apostrophe before the suffix is broken at the end of a line of printing, the apostrophe ends the line and no hyphen is used: . . . . . **Ankara'da in Ankara.**

Another use of the apostrophe is to distinguish between words of the same spelling if the context does not make it clear which is meant: *karn belly, kar'ın your wife, kar'ın of the snow.*

(d) One still sees occasional survivals of the Ottoman practice of using brackets round quotations, book-titles, or words especially emphasised, where we would use quotation marks or italic type.

**Unit One****1 Gender**

Turkish grammar makes no distinction of gender. The pronoun *o*, for example, means *he, she* or *it*. The alternatives will not be noted every time. So if told that *aldı* means *she took*, the reader must bear in mind that it may also mean *he took* or *it took*. Similarly, *yeri* *its place* may also be *her place* or *his place*.

**2 The indefinite article**

*Bir* *one* also serves as the indefinite article *a* or *an*: *bir ev a house, bir ada an island.*

**3 The plural suffix**

The sign of the plural is *-ler/lar* (see p. 12): *evler houses or the houses, adalar islands or the islands.* It precedes any other suffix. In such expressions as *to write letters, to sell newspapers, to eat chocolates*, the plural suffix is not used, the singular noun denoting the class, as in *to catch fish* or *Does the baby eat egg?* – not one egg or a plurality of eggs but egg in general.

**4 The cases**

There are five case-suffixes which may be added to nouns or pronouns to show their relation to other words in the sentence, but the student need not be afraid of having to master a vast battery of declensions such as intimidate the beginner in German or Russian. The names of the cases familiar to students of European languages will be used in

this book, with two exceptions: instead of nominative and accusative we shall speak of the absolute form and the definite objective case. The meanings and functions of these and the others will be made clear.

## 5 The definite article

There is no word in Turkish corresponding to *the*, and only the context tells us whether or not to insert *the* when translating into English:

Çay pahalı *Tea is expensive*      Çay soğuk *The tea is cold*

## 6 The absolute form

A distinction is made, however, when a noun is the direct object of a verb. If the noun is indefinite it remains in the simple form, that is, the form in which the word will be found in the dictionary:

Çay içtik *We drank tea*  
Kahve aldım *I bought coffee*  
Bir polis gördük *We saw a policeman*  
Polisler gördük *We saw [some] policemen*

This simple form with no case-suffix, which may be either the subject or the undefined object of a verb, is what we shall call the absolute form.

## 7 The definite objective case

When the object of a verb is definite, that is when it is the name of, or a pronoun referring to, a specific person, place or thing; or when the corresponding English word is preceded by *the*, by a demonstrative such as *this*, *that*, *those*, or by a word denoting its possessor (*I lost my book*, *she met her father*), so that there is no doubt about which person, place or thing is meant, it takes the definite objective suffix *-i/ü/a/u*:

Polisi gördüm *I saw the policeman*  
Polisleri saydık *We counted the policemen*  
Ahmet'i tanıdım *I recognised Ahmet*

Bingöl'ü gezdik *We toured Bingöl*  
Çayı içtik *We drank the tea*  
İstanbul'u gezdim *I toured Istanbul*

If you are puzzled by the various endings of the first words in those examples (i, ü, ı, u), have another look at pp. 12-13.

Nouns ending in a vowel insert *y* as a buffer, to keep the suffix distinct from the body of the word:

Ankara'yı gezdim *I toured Ankara*  
Kahveyi içtik *We drank the coffee*

## 8 The genitive case – of

The genitive suffix, denoting *of*, is *-in/ün/m/um* or, after a vowel, *-nin/nün/ün/unun*. The term 'possessive', which in English grammar is more usual than 'genitive', in Turkish is best reserved for the suffixes discussed in 2.4.

Ahmet'in *of Ahmet, Ahmet's*  
adamların *of the men, the men's*  
yol *road*      yolun *of the road*  
gün *day*      günün *of the day*

Remember the change of *k* between vowels to *ğ* (see note 6 on p. 8, end; note 2, p. 13):

köpek *dog*      köpeğin *of the dog, the dog's*  
kaynak *source*      kaynağın *of the source*  
kedi *cat*      kedinin *of the cat, the cat's*  
para *money*      paranın *of the money*  
köprü *bridge*      köprüünün *of the bridge*  
kuyu *well*      kuyunun *of the well*

The one irregular noun is *su* *water*, the genitive of which is *suyun* (not *-nün*).

## 9 The dative case – to, for

The suffix of the dative case, denoting *to* or *for*, is *-e/a* or, after a vowel, *-ye/ya*:

eve *to the house*      evlere *to the houses*

adama <i>to/for the man</i>	adamlara <i>to/for the men</i>
İstanbul'a <i>to Istanbul</i>	Ankara'ya <i>to Ankara</i>
köprüye <i>to the bridge</i>	köprülere <i>to the bridges</i>

The dative is the case of the indirect object; in sentences like *Will you lend me the book? I told her the time, We showed him the way, Give a dog a bone*, where (though the order of the English words would have to be changed) *to* could be inserted before *me, her, him, a dog*, all these words would be in the dative case in Turkish.

### 10 The locative case — *in, on, at*

The suffix is *-de/-da*: *evde in the house or at home, İstanbul'da in İstanbul, okulda in the school or at school.*

After an unvoiced consonant (see note 3 on p. 14), the suffix appears as *-te/-ta*: *otobüste on the bus, maçta at the match.*

### 11 The ablative case — *from, out of, through, than*

The suffix is *-den/-dan*, or *-ten/-tan* after an unvoiced consonant:

<i>evden from the house</i>	<i>İstanbul'dan from İstanbul</i>
<i>kapıdan through the door</i>	<i>Ahmet'ten from Ahmet</i>
<i>maçtan from the match</i>	

### 12 Summary of case endings

In this table, the letters in brackets are the buffer-letters, occurring only after words ending in a vowel.

<i>Last vowel of word in absolute form</i>	e or i	ö or ü	a or ı	o or u
Definite objective	-(y)i	-(y)ü	-(y)ı	-(y)u
Genitive of	-(n)in	-(n)ün	-(n)ın	-(n)un
Dative <i>to, for</i>	-(y)e	-(y)e	-(y)a	-(y)a
Locative <i>in, on, at</i>	-de	-de	-da	-da
Ablative <i>from, out of</i>	-den	-den	-dan	-dan

For the situations in which the locative and ablative suffixes begin with *t* instead of *d*, see note 3, p. 14.

### 13 Some models

To illustrate the sound changes set out in the previous chapter, the various cases of five nouns are tabulated here. It must be emphasised that there is no need to learn them by heart, so long as one knows the summary in note 12 and the sound changes.

Absolute	<i>bridge</i>	<i>dog</i>	<i>book</i>	<i>island</i>	<i>idea</i>
Def. obj.	köprü	köpek	kitap	ada	fikir
Genitive	köprüyü	köpeği	kitabı	adayı	fikri
Dative	köprünün	köpeğin	kitabın	adanın	fikrin
Locative	köprüye	köpege	kitaba	adaya	fikre
Ablative	köprüde	köpekte	kitapta	adada	fikride
	köprüden	köpekten	kitaptan	adadan	fikirden

### 14 Vowel length in loan-words

Some Arabic borrowings with an original long vowel in the last syllable retain it when a vowel is added but shorten it otherwise. Here is a list of the commonest of these:

<i>cevap answer</i>	<i>lüzum necessity</i>
<i>hal (-li) state, condition</i>	<i>zaman time</i>
<i>hayat (-tı) life</i>	<i>mahkûm condemned</i>

So *halin of the condition* and *hale to the condition* have a long *a*, while the absolute *hal*, the locative *halde in the condition* and the ablative *halden from the condition* have a short *a*: the *ü* is long in *mahkûmun* and *mahkûma* but short in *mahkûm* itself, in *mahkûmda* and in *mahkûmdan*.

### 15 Word order

The subject of a sentence usually comes at the beginning, the verb at the end. A definite precedes an indefinite word: 'I to the boy an apple gave' but 'I the apple to a boy gave.'

English prepositions such as *by, of, from*, with are represented in Turkish by suffixes or postpositions – that is, by syllables added at the end of the word to which they refer or by a word following it: *in it, according to you* become 'it-in', 'you-to according'.

Qualifying words precede the word they qualify: 'that man', 'that tall man', 'that hair-his combing tall man'. In such expressions as *far from town* and *bigger than you*, 'from town' and 'than you' qualify 'far' and 'bigger', so the Turkish order is 'town-from far', 'you-than bigger'.

If there is no special emphasis on any element in the sentence, expressions of time precede expressions of place, just after the subject at the beginning. The following model is worth memorising: Ahmet bugün şehirde bana bir hikâye anlattı 'Ahmet today town-in me-to a story told'. But any word which is to be emphasised is placed immediately before the verb: Ahmet şehirde bana bir hikâye bugün anlattı *It was today that Ahmet told me a story in town; Bugün şehirde bana bir hikâye Ahmet anlattı It was Ahmet who told me . . . and so on.*

### Vocabulary 1\*

ahyor he/she/it takes, is taking	İngiltere England
ahyorum I take, am taking	kahve coffee, café
bahçe garden	kız girl, daughter
bir a, an	köprü bridge
bu this	köy village
bugün today	küçük small
çay tea	otobüs bus
çocuk child	para money
elma apple	şehir (-hri), kent city
ev house	top ball
gidiyor he/she/it is going, goes	Türkiye Turkey
görüyorum I see, am seeing	vapur steamer
gösteriyor he/she/it shows, is showing	veriyor he/she/it gives, is giving
ıçıyoruz we drink, are drinking	veriyorum I give, am giving
	yarın tomorrow

\* This vocabulary contains all the words used in Exercises 1.1 and 1.2, except for names of people and cities. Subsequent exercises may use words which have been given in the units, not all of which are repeated in the individual vocabularies. They will be found in the general vocabulary at the end of the book.

### EXERCISE 1.1 Translate into English:

1 Köprüden; evlerin; kız; paradan; vapurda; otobüslere. 2 Bahçede çay ıçıyoruz. 3 Kızlar görüyorum; kızları görüyorum. 4 Ahmet bugün Ankara'ya gidiyor. 5 Kahveyi kızdan alıyorum. 6 Bu vapur, İstanbul'dan İzmir'e gidiyor. 7 Bahçede bir çocuk görüyorum. 8 Topu çocuğa veriyorum. 9 Bu küçük kız, yarın köyden şehre gidiyor. 10 Ahmet'i köprüde görüyorum.

### EXERCISE 1.2 Translate into Turkish:

1 I am giving the ball to the children. 2 The steamer goes from Turkey to England. 3 I see the girls on the bus. 4 I am seeing Ahmet tomorrow in Ankara. 5 On the little steamer we drink coffee. 6 The child is going today from Ankara to the village. 7 The girl is giving the child an apple. 8 Ahmet is showing the ball to the children in the garden. 9 The girl is taking the ball from the children. 10 I am giving Orhan this money today.

## Unit Two

### 1 The verb

The form of the verb given in dictionaries is the infinitive, which ends in **-mek/mak**: *girmek to go, almak to take*. The bit before the **-mek/mak** (*git, al*) is called the stem. All the verbs in Vocabulary I are in the present tense, which is formed by adding to the stem the invariable suffix **-yor**, or vowel plus **-yor**, to which in turn is added the appropriate part of the verb *to be*. Most of the tenses of the Turkish verb are formed in this way, on the pattern of the English *I am going, you are going*, rather than on the pattern of *I go, you go*. So the first step is to learn the present of the verb *to be*.

### 2 The verb *to be*, present tense

All persons of the present tense of the verb *to be* are suffixes, not independent words. They are never accented. Begin by memorising: **-im, -sin, -dir, -iz, -siniz, -dirler** *I am, you are*, etc. When you have done that, study the following table. It sets out the various shapes in which

	After e or i	After ö or ü	After a or ı	After o or u
--	-----------------	-----------------	-----------------	-----------------

<i>I am</i>	-im	-üm	-ım	-um
<i>you are</i>	-sin	-sün	-sın	-sun
<i>he/she/it is</i>	-dir/-tir	-dür/-tür	-dır/-tir	-dur/-tur
<i>we are</i>	-iz	-üz	-ız	-uz
<i>you are</i>	-siniz	-sünüz	-sınız	-sunuz
<i>they are</i>	-dirler	-dürler	-dırlar	-durular
	-tirler	-türler	-tırlar	-turular

the suffixes may occur, in accordance with the rules of vowel harmony and the variation between **d** and **t** noted in note 3 on p. 14. It will be seen that Turkish has a second person singular (corresponding to the older English *thou*), used when addressing children and intimates, like the French *tu*. In this book it will be translated as *you*.

**Türk, İngiliz, Fransız, Amerikalı, İstanbullu** mean respectively *Turk, English, French, American, belonging to Istanbul*. So:

Türküm <i>I am Turkish</i>	Türktür <i>She is Turkish</i>
İngilizim <i>I am English</i>	İngilizdir <i>She is English</i>
Fransızım <i>I am French</i>	Fransızdır <i>She is French</i>

After words ending in a vowel, a **y** is added as a buffer before the forms for *I am* and *we are*, to prevent the two vowels from coalescing: **Amerikalıyım I am American; İstanbulluyuz We are Istanbul people**.

In everyday speech and in informal writing, the forms for *is* and *(they) are* are little used. For **Ahmet is in Ankara** it is enough to say **Ahmet Ankara'da**, though in a formal letter one would write **Ahmet, Ankara'dadır**.

**Çocuklar bahçede** *The children are in the garden*

There was once a rule that **-dir** and **-dirler** must be used in statements of permanent validity – **Londra İngiltere'dedir London is in England**. It is no longer generally followed and one may well hear **Londra, İngiltere'de**.

Inanimate plural subjects usually take a singular verb; that is, **people are** but things **is**. An animate plural subject also may take a singular verb if it represents a number of people acting as one. Non-human living subjects may take a plural verb if they are thought of as individuals.

### 3 The verb *to be*, negative

The negative of *to be* is expressed by **değil** *not*, with the appropriate suffixes of the verb *to be*:

değilim	<i>I am not</i>	değiliz	<i>we are not</i>
değilsin	<i>you are not</i>	değilsiniz	<i>you are not</i>
değildir	<i>he/she/it is not</i>	değildirler	<i>they are not</i>

With the omission of **-dir**, *they are not* may be **değiller**.

**değil** also translates *not* without a verb: **Ahmet değil, Orhan gidiyor** ('Ahmet not, Orhan is going') *It isn't Ahmet, it's Orhan who's going.*

It is unnecessary to use the indefinite article **bir** in negative statements: **gocuk değilim** *I am not a child.* The reason is that if I am not of the class 'child' it is superfluous to say that I am not one single member of the class. For a similar reason, **bir** is unnecessary with nouns denoting nationality or occupation: **Türküm** *I am a Turk; öğrencisiniz* *you are a student.*

*For practice* Translate the following into Turkish:

- |                              |      |                                  |         |
|------------------------------|------|----------------------------------|---------|
| 1 I am hungry.               | (aç) | 6 We are not ready.              | (hazır) |
| 2 I am not hungry.           |      | 7 We are ready.                  |         |
| 3 She is not Turkish.        |      | 8 You are right.                 | (haklı) |
| 4 We are students. (öğrenci) |      | 9 You are responsible. (sorumlu) |         |
| 5 They are not students.     |      | 10 He is ill.                    | (hasta) |

#### 4 The personal pronouns

ben	<i>I</i>	biz	<i>we</i>
sen	<i>you (thou)</i>	siz	<i>you</i>
o	<i>he, she, it</i>	onlar	<i>they</i>

Since the endings of the verb change according to the person, the pronouns are mainly used for emphasis: **Ben tembel değilim, sen tembelsin** *I am not lazy, you are lazy.*

All of them except **siz** exhibit certain irregularities. **Ben** and **biz** have **m** instead of **n** in the genitive. **Ben** and **sen** shift from the front-vowel to the back-vowel class in the dative. The **n** which precedes the suffixes of **o** occurs in other third-person pronouns and is referred to as the 'pronominal **n**'. These features are shown in bold in the following table:

ben	<i>I</i>	sen	<i>you (thou)</i>	<b>o</b>	<i>he/she/it</i>
beni	<i>me</i>	seni	<i>you (thee)</i>	onu	<i>him/her/it</i>
benim	<i>of me</i>	senin	<i>of you</i>	onun	<i>of him, etc.</i>
bana	<i>to me</i>	sana	<i>to you</i>	ona	<i>to him, etc.</i>
bende	<i>in me</i>	sende	<i>in you</i>	onda	<i>in him, etc.</i>
benden	<i>from me</i>	senden	<i>from you</i>	ondan	<i>from him, etc.</i>

biz	<i>we</i>	siz	<i>you</i>	onlar	<i>they</i>
bizi	<i>us</i>	sizi	<i>you</i>	onları	<i>them</i>
bizim	<i>of us</i>	sizin	<i>of you</i>	onların	<i>of them</i>
bize	<i>to us</i>	size	<i>to you</i>	onlara	<i>to them</i>
bizde	<i>in us</i>	size	<i>in you</i>	onlarda	<i>in them</i>
bizden	<i>from us</i>	sizden	<i>from you</i>	onlardan	<i>from them</i>

When a single person is being addressed, **siz** is more polite than **sen**. On the other hand, when speaking of oneself it is more modest to use the plural **biz** *we* than **ben** *I*, contrary to English usage. When more than one person is referred to, these words may take the plural suffix: **bizler** *we*, **sizler** *you*.

#### 5 The possessive suffixes

	After consonants	After vowels
<i>my</i>	-im/üm/ım/um	-m
<i>your</i>	-in/ün/ın/un	-n
<i>his/her/its</i>	-i/ü/v/u	-si/sü/st/su
<i>our</i>	-imiz/ürünüz/ımız/umuz	-miz/müz/mız/muz
<i>your</i>	-iniz/ünüz/ınız/unuz	-niz/nüz/nız/nuz
<i>their</i>	-leri/lari	-leri/lari

Examples after consonants:

evim	<i>my house</i>	gözüm	<i>my eye</i>
kızım	<i>my daughter</i>	kolum	<i>my arm</i>
evin	<i>your house</i>	gözün	<i>your eye</i>
kızın	<i>your daughter</i>	kolum	<i>your arm</i>
evi	<i>its house</i>	gözü	<i>his eye</i>
kızı	<i>her daughter</i>	kolu	<i>her arm</i>
otomobilimiz	<i>our car</i>	doktorumuz	<i>our doctor</i>
treniniz	<i>your train</i>	ününüz	<i>your fame</i>
evleri	<i>their house</i>	gocukları	<i>their children</i>

Examples after vowels:

annem <i>my mother</i>	babam <i>my father</i>
param/paranız <i>your money</i>	annesi <i>her mother</i>
babası <i>his father</i>	ordusu <i>his army</i>
köprüsü <i>its bridge</i>	paramız <i>our money</i>
anneleri <i>their mother</i>	odaları <i>their room</i>

The case endings follow these suffixes, but after the suffixes of the third person the pronominal *n* (see note 4) is inserted before any case ending:

kolumun <i>of his arm</i>	gözüne <i>to her eye</i>
annesine <i>to his mother</i>	köprüsünde <i>on its bridge</i>
odalarından <i>from their room</i>	

Notice the four possible meanings of *evleri*, for example. It can be the definite objective of the plural, as in *evleri satık* *we sold the houses*, or the plural with the possessive suffix of the third person singular, *his/her/its houses*, or the singular with the suffix of the third person plural, *their house*. Further, when *-leri* *their* is suffixed to a plural noun, such as *evler*, one *-ler* drops out. So *evleri* can also mean *their houses*.

*Evin* can be *your house* or *of the house*. Except in the absolute case, there is no distinction of spelling or pronunciation between the *thy* suffix and the *his/her/its* suffix when it follows a consonant: *gözüne to your eye* or *to his/her/its eye*; *evinden from your house* or *from her house*; *kolunda on your arm* or *on his arm*. There is no such ambiguity when the *his/her/its* suffix follows a vowel: *annenden from your mother* but *annesinden from her mother*.

The ambiguities mentioned in the two previous paragraphs are resolved by the use of the genitive of the personal pronouns:

onun evleri <i>his houses</i>	onların evleri <i>their houses</i>
onun gözüne <i>to her eye</i>	senin gözüne <i>to your eye</i>

Our sole irregular noun *su* *water* adds a *y* before vowels:

<i>su</i> <i>its water</i>	<i>suyunuz</i> <i>your water</i>
----------------------------	----------------------------------

## 6 Uses of the possessive suffixes

In all the examples given in the previous section, these suffixes indicate possession: *my house*, *our money*, and so on. If the possessor is a definite noun, as in *the doctor's room* or *the door of the house*, that noun goes into the genitive and the two words are then said to be in the possessive relationship: *doktorun odası*, *evin kapısı*.

If the possessor is not definite, it remains in the absolute form and the two words are said to be in the qualifying relationship: *ticaret odası* *chamber of commerce*, *ev kapısı* *house-door*. It may help to think of such groups as meaning 'commerce chamber-thereof', 'house door-thereof'.

In the Turkish for such phrases as *the girls' room*, for which we might expect 'of-the-girls their-room' *kızların odaları*, as the plurality of the possessor is already shown by the *-lar* of *kızların* we find instead *kızların odası*, while *kızların odaları* means *the girls' rooms*.

Colloquially, the genitive cases of pronouns of the first and second persons may be used instead of the possessive suffixes: *benim oda* 'of-me the room' *my room*, *senin ev* 'of-you the house' *your house*, *bizim köy* *our village*. In writing and formal speech these would be *odam*, *evin*, *köyümüz* or, if the identities of the possessors are emphasised, *benim odam*, *senin evin*, *bizim köyümüz*.

*Own* is *kendi*:

<i>kendi odam</i> <i>my own room</i>
<i>kendi evin</i> <i>your own house</i>
<i>kendi köyümüz</i> <i>our own village</i>

*For practice* Translate the following into Turkish:

1 My passport	(pasaport)	6 Our proposal	(öneri)
2 Your foot	(ayak)	7 Your book	(kitap)
3 Her mother	(anne)	8 Their child	(çocuk)
4 His face	(yüz)	9 Our grapes	(üzüm)
5 Its wheel	(tekerlek)	10 His melon	(karpuz)

## 7 The interrogative particle

To turn any word into a question, we put *mi* after it. Although it is written as a separate word, its vowel varies as if it were a suffix: *Kız mı?* *The girl?* or *İs it a girl?*; *Türk mü?* *Turkish?* See also 'Exceptional



vowel harmony', p. 12: *Gol mü? A goal? Saat mi? Is it a clock?* The main accent in the sentence falls on the syllable before the *mi*, which itself is never accented.

Consider these examples:

Başbakan Çin'e gidiyor *The Prime Minister is going to China.*  
 Başbakan Çin'e gidiyor mu? *Is the P.M. going to China?*  
 Başbakan Çin'e mi gidiyor? *Is it to China that the P.M. is going?*  
 Çin'e Başbakan mı gidiyor? *Is it the P.M. who is going to China?*

In questions consisting of an adjective or noun and part of the verb *to be*, such as *Are you tired?*, *Is he a student?*, it is the condition of the person and not his existence that is in question, so the *mi* follows the adjective or noun, not the verb:

Yorgun musun? Öğrenci midir?

*Değil mi? Not?* is used like the French *n'est ce pas?* to seek confirmation of a statement:

Hava güzel, değil mi? *The weather is beautiful, isn't it?*

## 8 Adjectives

Adjectives (words which describe nouns) are sometimes used as nouns in English; e.g. *meeek*, usually an adjective, is a noun in *Blessed are the meek*. This happens far more often in Turkish:

geng çocuklar *young children*  
 bir geng *a youth, young person*  
 gençler *the young*

We would think of *far* and *near* as adjectives, but the corresponding Turkish words *uzak* and *yakın* may take noun endings: *uzakta* and *uzaklarda* *far off, in the distance*; *yakında* and *yakınlarda* *near by, soon, recently*.

As in English, names of materials can be used either way:

altından bir saat *a watch [made] from gold*  
 bir altın saat *a gold watch*

Where English has *a* or *an* plus adjective plus noun – *a big house, a rainy day* – Turkish as a rule says 'big a house', 'rainy a day'. The

exception is when there is at least as much emphasis on the noun as on the adjective.

Ablası, akıllı bir kız *His elder sister is an intelligent girl* (we already know from the word *abla* *elder sister* that the subject is female, so there is no emphasis on the noun *kız*)  
 Kardeşi, bir akıllı kız *His sibling is an intelligent girl* (it might have been a boy)

Fare deliğinde küçük bir fare gördüm *In the mousehole I saw a small mouse*

Fare deliğinde bir küçük kertenkele gördüm *In the mousehole I saw a small lizard*

The attributive adjective always precedes its noun, as in English (e.g. *kara kedi black cat*) and never follows it as in French (*chat noir*). *Kedi kara* can only mean *the cat is black*.

## Vocabulary 2

adam <i>man</i>	kadın <i>woman</i>
akşam <i>evening</i>	karakol <i>police station</i>
araba, otomobil <i>car</i>	kardeş <i>brother or sister</i>
arkadaş <i>friend</i>	kitap <i>book</i>
baba <i>father</i>	komşu <i>neighbour</i>
bagaj <i>luggage</i>	mektup <i>letter</i>
büyük <i>big, great</i>	meşgul (-lü) <i>busy</i>
calışkan <i>hard-working</i>	müdür <i>director, manager</i>
dükkan <i>shop</i>	oda <i>room</i>
dün <i>yesterday</i>	oğul (-ğlu) <i>son</i>
eski <i>old</i> (things), <i>former</i>	önemli, mühim <i>important</i>
(people)	pek <i>very</i>
evet <i>yes</i>	sinema <i>cinema</i>
Galata <i>Galata</i> (business	sonra <i>after, afterwards</i>
quarter of Istanbul)	şimdi <i>now</i>
gittiler <i>they went, have gone</i>	(-den) uzak <i>far (from)</i>
hayır <i>no</i>	üniversite <i>university</i>
her <i>every</i>	(-e) yakın <i>near (to)</i>
istasyon <i>railway station</i>	yazdınız <i>you wrote, have written</i>
iş <i>work, job, matter, business</i>	yeni <i>new</i>

## EXERCISE 2.1 Translate into English:

1 Kardeşiniz istasyona gitti mi? 2 Arkadaşlarınızın dükkânı Galata'da, köprüye yakın. 3 Yeni arabasını/otomobilini bu adamdan değil, bu adamın babasından aldı. 4 Onun kızının evi istasyondan uzak değil, pek yakındır. 5 Bir komşumuzun oğlu Ankara'ya gidiyor, Üniversiteye. 6 Dün akşam biz değil, çocuklarımız sime-maya gittiler. 7 Yeni müdür çalışkan mı? - Hayır, pek çalışkan değil. 8 Bu mektubu siz mi yazdınız? 9 Komşularımız, yeni evlerine gittiler mi? 10 Çocuk, odasıdadır. Çocuğun odasıdadır. Çocuğun, odasıdadır.

## EXERCISE 2.2 Translate into Turkish:

1 I am buying a new car, [and] I am giving my old car to my daughter. 2 The former director is going to Ankara this evening, isn't he? 3 The woman is showing their new house to her friends. 4 I see your neighbour every evening on Galata Bridge; is his business in Galata? 5 The police station is not far from the university. 6 This is not your book, it's my own book. 7 Is her father's job very important? 8 I am now going to my friend's house, [and] afterwards I am going to the cinema. 9 Your luggage is now at the station. 10 Are you busy this evening?

## Unit Three

## 1 Qualifying nouns

In English we make one noun qualify another simply by putting it in front of the other: *handbag, snakeskin, theatre-ticket*. The Turks put the two nouns in the qualifying relationship (see note 2.6) and say 'hand its-bag', 'snake its-skin', 'theatre its-ticket':

el hand, çanta bag	el çantası
ylan snake, deri skin	ylan derisi
tiyatro theatre, bilet ticket	tiyatro bileti

Study these examples:

ay month	mart ayı the month of March
yıl year	1453 yılı the year 1453
ada island	Kıbrıs adası the island of Cyprus
evet yes	evet cevabı the answer 'yes'
cevap answer	
gitmek to go	gitmek niyeti the intention of going
niyet intention	
çilek strawberry	çilek dondurması strawberry-ice
dondurma icecream	
fincan cup	kahve fincanı coffee-cup
kent city	Ankara kenti the city of Ankara
yatak bed	yatak odası bedroom
oda room	

The plurals of such compounds are formed by inserting *-ler/lar* before the possessive suffix: *kahve fincanları, yatak odaları*.

The *its* suffix is dropped if a possessive suffix is used to denote the possessor: *kahve fincanım my coffee-cup, kahve fincanınız your*

*coffee-cup*. It follows that *kahve fincanı* may mean *his/her coffee-cup* as well as *coffee-cup*; in the former event the genitive of the personal pronoun is used if ambiguity might otherwise arise: *onun kahve fincanı*.

Do not forget to insert the pronominal *n* between the *-i* or *-si* and the case-suffixes:

*in the coffee-cup kahve fincanında*  
*to the bedrooms yatak odalarına*

There are some expressions which originated as compounds of this kind but are now treated as simple nouns. The commonest are:

*ayakkabı* 'foot its-cover' *footwear, shoes*  
*binbaşı* 'thousand its-head' *major*  
*yüzbaşı* 'hundred its-head' *captain*  
*onbaşı* 'ten its-head' *corporal*  
*denizaltı* 'sea its-underneath' *submarine*

So *çocuğun ayakkabısı* *the child's shoes*, *binbaşlar* *majors*, *yüzbaşya* *to the captain*, *denizaltıda* *in the submarine*.

## 2 Place-names as qualifiers

When a noun represents a definite possessor it goes into the genitive, so *bu yılan derisi* *this snakeskin* but *bu yılanın derisi* *the skin of this snake*. Place-names, however, even when they might be regarded as possessors and not just qualifiers, tend to stay in the absolute form:

*Türkiye Başbakanı* *the Prime Minister of Turkey*  
*Adana Müzesi* *the Adana Museum*

If a word intervenes, however, the qualifying noun is put into the genitive:

*Türkiye'nin yeni Başbakanı* *Turkey's new Prime Minister*  
*Adana'nın güzel müzesi* *the beautiful museum of Adana*

## 3 Nouns of nationality as qualifiers

Where we use an adjective of nationality (e.g. *English history*, *the Turkish army*, *French literature*), Turkish uses a qualifying noun,

usually identical with the noun denoting persons of that nationality: *İngiliz tarihi*, *Türk ordusu*, *Fransız edebiyatı*.

Since what we call the singular noun in Turkish denotes a category as well as a single member of that category (1.3), *İngiliz tarihi* is to be understood not as 'Englishman his-history' but 'the English their-history'. (Or indeed 'the British their-history'; the word *Britanya* *Britain* exists in Turkish, but is not generally known.)

For *American* there are two words, the noun or adjective *Amerikalı* and the noun *Amerikan*. The latter is used for things, the former for people:

*Bir Amerikalı* *an American*  
*Bir Amerikalı turist kadın* *an American woman tourist*  
*Amerikan doları* *the American dollar*

*For practice* Translate into Turkish, using the words given in the three preceding sections:

- |                             |                           |
|-----------------------------|---------------------------|
| 1 in the bedrooms           | 7 coffee-ices             |
| 2 of Turkish literature     | 8 in the Antalya Museum   |
| 3 to the city of Ankara     | 9 from the French islands |
| 4 from the island of Cyprus | 10 to the British army    |
| 5 Turkish corporals         | 11 in the Garden Cinema   |
| 6 in American history       | 12 of Marmara University  |

## 4 The verb, past tense

Each tense of the verb is formed by adding a suffix to the stem, the resulting word being the third person singular of the tense, to which further suffixes are added to indicate the other persons. The personal suffixes used with most tenses are forms of the verb *to be*. This is not so with the past tense, which has its own personal endings.

The tense-suffix of the past is *-di*. To take as an example *vermek* *to give*, the stem is *ver* and the third person of the past (*he/she/it gave* or *has given*) is *verdi*. To save space, the *has given* and *she/it* translations are omitted from the following tables:

	<i>vermek</i> <i>to give</i>	
<i>verdim</i> <i>I gave</i>		<i>verdik</i> <i>we gave</i>
<i>verdin</i> <i>you gave</i>		<i>verdiniz</i> <i>you gave</i>
<i>verdi</i> <i>he gave</i>		<i>verdiler</i> <i>they gave</i>

*gördüm I saw* *gördük we saw*  
*gördün you saw* *gördünüz you saw*  
*gördü he saw* *gördüler they saw*

*bakım I looked* *baktık we looked*  
*baktınız you looked* *baktınız you looked*  
*baktı he looked* *baktılar they looked*

*buldum I found* *bulduk we found*  
*buldun you found* *buldunuz you found*  
*buldu he found* *buldular they found*

\*See note 3 on p. 14.

## 5 The verb *to be*, past and conditional

In the English verb *to be* are included a number of words of different origins – *be, am, is, are, was* – and the same is true in Turkish. We have met the present tense in 2.2. For the infinitive, *olmak*, which properly means *to come to be, become, happen, mature*, is used. The past tense is based on a stem *i-*, to which are added the suffixes shown in note 4.

*idim I was* *idik we were*  
*idin you were* *idiniz you were*  
*idi he was* *idler they were*

The conditional of the verb *to be* has the same personal endings as the past and is also based on the stem *i-*. The suffix of the conditional is -se:

*isem if I am* *isek if we are*  
*isen if you are* *iseniz if you are*  
*ise if he is* *iseler if they are*

Both these sets of forms, which are unaccented, are used either as independent words or as suffixes. In the latter case, the first *i* disappears after a consonant and changes to *y* after a vowel, the remainder of the suffix being subject to vowel harmony:

*Izmir'de idik/Izmir'deydik we* *Izmir'de isek/Izmir'deysek if we*  
*were in Izmir* *are in Izmir*  
*hazır idin/hazırın you were* *hazır isen/hazırsan if you are*  
*ready* *ready*  
*sorumlu idim/sorumluydum I* *sorumlu isem/sorumluysam if I*  
*was responsible* *am responsible*  
*müdür idi/müdürdü he was the* *müdür ise/müdürse if he is the*  
*director* *director*

The interrogative *mi* combines with the suffixed forms:

*Izmir'de miydik? Were we in Izmir?*  
*Hazır mıydın? Were you ready?*  
*Sorumlu muydum? Was I responsible?*  
*Müdür müydü? Was he the director?*

The past tense of *olmak to become, happen*, is regular: *oldum, oldun, oldu, olduk, oldunuz, oldular*.

Examples:

*Öğretmen olmak to be/to become a teacher; öğretmen oldum I became a*  
*idim/öğretmendim I was a teacher; öğretmen idim I became a*  
*teacher*  
*Bir kaza idi/Bir kazaydı it was an accident; bir kaza oldu an*  
*accident happened*

## 6 The verb, negative

The negative of the parts of *to be* based on the stem *i-* is formed, like the negative of the present tense of *to be* (2.3), by suffixing them to *değil: değilim I am not, değilsem if I am not, değilim I was not*.

The negative of all other verbs is formed by adding *-me* to the stem. The accent falls on the syllable preceding the *-me* (but see note (c), p. 15).

*istemek to want* *istememek not to want*  
*istedim I wanted* *istemedim I did not want*  
*bakmak to look* *bakmamak not to look*  
*baktım I looked* *bakmadım I did not look*  
*olmak to happen* *olmamak not to happen*  
*oldu mu? did it happen?* *olmadı mı? did it not happen?*

## 7 To have; var, yok

The adjectives *var* *existent* and *yok* *non-existent* are used for *there is* and *there is not* respectively: *Bu şehirde temiz bir otel var mı? Is there a decent hotel in this city?* The answer may be *var* *there is* or *yok* *there is not*.

These two words are used where English uses *to have*, thus:

Bir kızkardeşim var 'a my-sister exists' *I have a sister*

Kızkardeşinizin çocuğu var mı? 'of-your-sister her-child exists?

*Has your sister any children?*

Param yok *I have no money*; Bende para yok 'in-me money non-existent' (this does not denote such total penury as *param yok*, meaning rather *I've no money on me*).

*Var* and *yok* are used in the present tense and with those parts of *to be* that are based on the stem *i-*.

Müdürün güzel bir evi vardı (for *var idi*) *The director had a beautiful house*

Param yoktu *I had no money*

Otherwise the requisite part of *olmak* is used alone:

Güzel bir evimiz olacak 'beautiful an our-house will be' *We're going to have a beautiful house*

Param olmayacak *I shall not have money*

Take care to distinguish between *vardı* as in the previous paragraph and *vardı* the past tense of *varmak* *to arrive*. The former is accented on the first syllable because its *-dı* is the suffixed form of the unaccented *idi*.

## 8 The suffix -li

The addition of *-li* to a noun or noun-phrase makes a word meaning characterised by or possessing whatever the original represents. The resemblance to the English suffix *-ly* (as in *shapely* from *shape*) is a useful aid to memory, but is sheer coincidence.

değer	value	değerti	valuable
tedbir	prudence	tedbirli	prudent
sevgi	love	sevgili	dear, darling
anlam	meaning	anlamli	significant

Bizans	Byzantium	Bizanslı	Byzantine
Londra	London	Londralı	Londoner
ev	house	evli	married
resim	picture	resimli	illustrated
şoför	driver	şoförlü	chauffeur-driven
köy	village	köylü	villager, peasant
orta boy	middle stature	orta boylu	of medium height
uzun	long	uzun boylu	tall

Added to the name of a colour, *-li* makes a word meaning 'dressed in that colour': *kırmızı red*; *kırmızılı kız the girl in red*.

One sees signs on Turkish roads reading: *ŞOFÖRÜN TEDBİRLİSİ HERKEŞİN SEVGİLİSİ*. This will be intelligible if we remember that the Turkish singular noun may denote a category as well as a single member of it (see notes 3 and 1.3): 'Of the category "driver" the prudent-thereof...? *The prudent sort of driver* [is] everybody's *darling*.

If *-li* is added to a phrase containing a qualifying noun, the possessive suffix is dropped:

Osman adı ('Osman name-thereof') *the name Osman*; Osman adlı bir genç ('an Osman-named youth') *a young man named Osman*  
23 Nisan tarihli ('23 April its-date') *the date of 23 April*; 23 Nisan tarihli mektubunuz *your letter dated 23 April*  
Bir numarası ('one its-number') *the number 1*; Bir numaralı oda *room number 1*.

Residents of *Kuşadası* ('Bird island-thereof') are *Kuşadalılar*.

For *numara* the international abbreviation *No.* or *no.* is used, and for *Room no.* *I* one may see and hear *Bir no.lu oda*, the full stop not affecting the pronunciation.

## 9 The suffix -siz

*-siz* means *without*:

akıl	intelligence	aklısız	unintelligent
son	end	sonsuz	endless
sen	you	sensiz	without you
o	he/she/it	onsuz (2.4)	without him/her/it
değer	value	değersiz	worthless
vakit	time	vakitsiz	untimely

## Vocabulary 3

ada island	kılık aspect, costume, 'get-up'
adres address	kızkardeş sister
ağaç tree	kim? who?
ağız (-gzi) mouth	maalesef unfortunately,
ama, ne var ki, fakat but	regrettably
ana, anne* mother	memleket, ülke country, land
başka other, different	meyva fruit
başlıca chief, principal	ne? what?
belki perhaps	niçin? why?
... bile even...	otel hotel
bilmece riddle	paleo overcoat
boş empty, vacant	pasaport passport
cumhuriyet republic	perişan untidy, disordered
çok many, much, a lot of	pipo (tobacco) pipe
çözüm solution	polis police, policeman
dağ mountain	rehber directory, guide
dam roof	saat (-ti) hour, watch, clock
deri skin	sabah morning
devlet (-ti) State	sarı yellow
efendi master	sergi exhibition, display
eser, yapıt work (lit. or	sokak street
artistic)	su water
Fatih Conqueror (Sultan	şapka hat
Mehmet II)	taş stone
gerçek, asıl real, genuine	taşınmak to move house
görevli, memur officer,	tek el monopoly
official, civil servant	telefon telephone
gürültü noise	tütün tobacco
halk people	vakit (-kii) time
harita map	yatak bed
ırmak river	yıl, sene year
içki alcoholic drink	
iskele landing-stage	
kapalı closed, covered	

\* Anne is the big-city word for mother in the literal sense. In provincial speech and metaphorically, ana is used: *anayol main road*; *anakent metropolis*; *anahat main line*; *anayasa constitution* ('mother-law').

## EXERCISE 31 Translate into English:

1 Bilmece: Dağı var, taşı yok; köyü var, damı yok; ırmığı var, suyu yok. 2 Polis görevlileri pasaportuma bakmadılar bile. 3 Arkadaşlarınız başka bir eve taşındılar, değil mi? 4 Bu sabah Adalar iskelesinde sizi bir saat bekledik; niçin gelmediniz? 5 Pipo tütünü almak istedi ama dükkân kapalıydı. - Başka bir dükkân yok muydu? - Yardı, ama tütünü yoktu. 6 Bahçemizde bir elma ağacı var fakat bu yıl meyva vermedi. 7 Sarılı kız Orhan'ın kardeşi ise, kırmızı kız kimdir? 8 Faith, 1453 yılında İstanbul'u Bizanslılardan aldı. 9 Devlet Tekeli, Cumhuriyetin büyük bir eseri, memleketin başlıca bir kazanç kaynağı idi. 10 Yakup Kadri'nin (Anamın Kitabı) adlı kitabını okumadın mı? 11 İstanbul sergisine gitmek istedik, ne var ki vaktimiz yoktu, maalesef. 12 Bilmece nin çözümü: Harita.

## EXERCISE 32 Translate into Turkish:

1 Is your sister married? - Unfortunately she isn't. 2 He wanted to move to another hotel. 3 If this watch is new, what became [of] your old watch? 4 I saw your brother in the street in an untidy get-up, hatless and coatless. 5 Is the tall child the director's son? - No, he has a daughter, he has no son. 6 Perhaps he found our address in the telephone directory. 7 Your apple trees have given a lot of fruit this year, haven't they? 8 My bedroom is very small. Is there a vacant room in your hotel? - Unfortunately there isn't. 9 My sister wanted to buy their house but I didn't like it, it's very small. 10 The people is the real master of the country.

## Unit Four

## 1 The verb, present, present-past and present conditional

As has been outlined in 2.1, the suffix of the present tense is *-yor*, preceded by a high vowel, *i, ü, u* or *u*, according to the nature of the last vowel of the stem:

gelmek	to come	geliyor	he is coming
görmek	to see	görüyor	he is seeing
almak	to take	alıyor	he is taking
bulmak	to find	buluyor	he is finding

If the stem already ends in a high vowel, the *-yor* is added directly to it:

taşınmak	to carry	taşıyor	he is carrying
korunmak	to protect	koruyor	he is protecting

If the stem ends in a low vowel, the effect of the *y* of the suffix is to change it to the corresponding high vowel:

demek	to say	diyor	he is saying
söylemek	to tell	söylüyor	he is telling
anlamak	to understand	anlıyor	he understands
kollamak	to observe	kolluyor	he is observing

To this present base are added the present or past of the verb *to be* (2.2, 3) but not *-dur*, as the base itself denotes the third person singular. Remember that the suffixes of *to be* are never accented. Here are the present and present-past tenses of *gelmek*:

geliyorum	<i>I am coming</i>	geliyordum	<i>I was coming</i>
geliyorsunuz	<i>you are ...</i>	geliyordunuz	<i>you were ...</i>
geliyor	<i>he is ...</i>	geliyordu	<i>he was ...</i>

geliyoruz	<i>we are ...</i>	geliyorduk	<i>we were ...</i>
geliyorsunuzuz	<i>you are ...</i>	geliyordunuz	<i>you were ...</i>
geliyorlar	<i>they are ...</i>	geliyorlardı	} <i>they were ...</i>
		geliyorlardılar	

The present conditional is made by adding the suffixed forms of *isem* to the base: *geliyorsam* if *I am coming*, *geliyorsanız* if *you are coming*, and so on.

As *-yor* is invariable (see note (b), p. 11), these endings are the same for all verbs.

## 2 The present and present-past, negative

When the endings shown in the preceding section are added to the negative stem, the *-me* or *-ma* is subject to the vowel changes described above:

gelmemek	<i>not to come</i>	gelmiyoruz	<i>we are not coming</i>
		gelmiyorduk	<i>we were not coming</i>
		gelmiyorsanız	<i>if we are not coming</i>

görmemek	<i>not to see</i>	görmüyorum	<i>I am not seeing</i>
		görmüyordum	<i>I was not seeing</i>
		görmüyorsanız	<i>if I am not seeing</i>
almamak	<i>not to take</i>	almıyorsunuz	<i>you are not taking</i>
		almıyordunuz	<i>you were not taking</i>
		almıyorsanız	<i>if you are not taking</i>

olmamak	<i>not to happen</i>	olmuyor	<i>it is not happening</i>
		olmuyordunuz	<i>it was not happening</i>
		olmuyorsa	<i>if it is not happening</i>

## 3 The present and present-past, interrogative

The interrogative particle *mi* is placed after the *-yor* except in the third person plural, where it follows the *-lar*.

geliyor muyuz?	<i>are we coming?</i>	gelmiyor muyuz?	<i>are we not coming?</i>
----------------	-----------------------	-----------------	---------------------------

görüyorlar mı *are they seeing?* } *weren't*  
 görmüyorlar mıydı? } *they*  
 görmüyordular mı? } *seeing?*  
 alıyor mu? *is she taking?* alıyor muydu? *was she not*  
 taking?

#### 4 Cardinal numerals

sıfır <i>zero</i>	on bir <i>eleven</i>	otuz <i>thirty</i>
bir <i>one</i>	on iki <i>twelve</i>	kırk <i>forty</i>
iki <i>two</i>	on üç <i>thirteen</i>	elli <i>fifty</i>
üç <i>three</i>	on dört <i>fourteen</i>	altmış <i>sixty</i>
dört <i>four</i>	on beş <i>fifteen</i>	yetmiş <i>seventy</i>
beş <i>five</i>	on altı <i>sixteen</i>	seksen <i>eighty</i>
altı <i>six</i>	on yedi <i>seventeen</i>	doksan <i>ninety</i>
yedi <i>seven</i>	on sekiz <i>eighteen</i>	yüz [a] <i>hundred</i>
sekiz <i>eight</i>	on dokuz <i>nineteen</i>	bin [a] <i>thousand</i>
dokuz <i>nine</i>	yirmi <i>twenty</i>	milyon [a] <i>million</i>
on <i>ten</i>		

For an American billion, i.e. a thousand million, the Turks use *milyar*, the French *milliard*. Numbers are compounded as in English, the highest first, but with no equivalent of *and*: *yüz otuz [a]* *hundred [and] thirty*; *bin elli üç [a]* *thousand [and] fifty-three*.

In the numbers from 11 to 19, the accent is on the *on*. In compound numbers above 20, the last syllable of the units figure is accented: *yirmi sekiz* *twenty-eight*; *elli bir* *fifty-one*.

With case endings, *on ten* looks and sounds exactly like *o he/she/it/that* with case endings: *onu, onun, ona, onda, ondan*. So too in the plural: *onlar* may mean *they* or *tens*. In practice, ambiguities are unlikely.

Turks put a full stop after the thousands, where we put a comma, so *yedi milyon yedi yüz yetmiş yedi bin yedi yüz yetmiş yedi* is written in figures 7.777.777.

Words preceded by a number do not normally take the plural suffix, as the use of a number greater than one necessarily implies plurality: *otuz beş yıl* *thirty-five years*; *iki çocuk* *two children*.

A singular noun similarly follows *kaç* *how many?*: *Kaç gün kalıyor?* *How many days is she staying?*

The exceptions to this rule consist in a few set expressions. *Üç ay* *three months* but *Üç Aylar* *the Three Sacred Months of the Islamic year*; *kırk harami* *forty robbers* but *Kırk Haramiler* *The Forty Thieves*.

The word *tane* ('grain'), less commonly *adet* ('number'), may be inserted between number and noun without affecting the translation: *iki bilet* or *iki tane bilet* *two tickets*. If the noun is not expressed, *tane* is generally used:

*Kaç bilet istiyorsunuz? How many tickets do you want? - İki tane* *Two*

*Baş head* is similarly used when enumerating livestock:

*elli baş manda* *fifty water-buffalo*  
*beş yüz baş koyun* *five hundred sheep*

Note also *dört baş soğan* *four onions*.

*Tane* is not used before units of measurement, so *Üç saatim var* *I have three hours* but *Üç tane saatim var* *I have three watches*.

The word for *person* with numerals is *kişi*:

*Kaç kişisiniz? - Üç kişiyiz* *How many are you? - We are three*

The rules of vowel harmony and consonant assimilation must be observed when writing figures: *beşten yediye* *from five to seven* is written *5'ten 7'ye*; *dokuzdan on altıya* *from nine to sixteen* is written *9'dan 16'ya*. *Bin dört yüz elli üçte* *in 1453* is written in figures 1453'te. Some writers omit the apostrophes, writing *5ten 7ye*, and so on.

For *once*, *twice*, *three times*, etc., the numeral and *defa*, *kez* or *kere* *time*, *occasion* are used: *bir defa*, *iki kez*, *üç kere*.

In such phrases as *one or two*, the *or* is not translated: *Onu beş altı defa gördüm* *I've seen her five or six times*.

*Severai* is *üç beş*; *oddy*, *üç dört* and *dört beş* are seldom used.

*Kırk forty* is used for an indefinitely high number, like our 'umpteen', except that it is not a slang use: *kırk yıldı bir* 'in forty years one' *once in a blue moon*.

*Yüz* can be tricky: besides *hundred* it may mean *face* or *cause*. Thus *ikiyüzlü* is not *two-hundredish* but *two-faced*, while *bu yüzden* is *from this cause*; for *from this hundred*, one would say *bu yüz taneden* (things) or *bu yüz kişiden* (persons).



## 5 Demonstratives

- bu *this* (next to the speaker), *this which precedes*  
 şu *this, that* (just over there), *this which follows*  
 o *that* (right over there or out of sight)

We have already met *o* in the sense of *he, she* or *it* and the table of the cases of *o* in 2.4 serves as a model for *bu* and *şu* as well. All three add the pronominal *n* before suffixes: *bundan* *from this*, *şuna* *to that*, *onlar* *those people*.

Like their English equivalents, these words are used as adjectives or pronouns:

- o* mektup *that letter*  
*o* başka *that's different*  
 bu saati buldun mu? *did you find this watch?*  
 bunu buldunuz mu? *did you find this?*  
 şu köylüler *those peasants*  
 sunlar köylü değiller *those aren't peasants*

Derived from *bu*, *şu* and *o* are:

- böyle *thus, in this way, like this, such*  
 şöyle *thus, in this/that way, like this/that, such*  
 öyle *this, in that way, like that, such*

## 6 Postpositions with absolute or genitive case

- ile *with, by means of* gibi *like*  
 kadar *as . . . as* için *for*

The pronouns *ben*, *sen*, *o*, *biz*, *siz*, *bu*, *şu*, and *kim* *who?* but not the plurals *onlar*, *bizler*, etc., take the genitive suffix before these postpositions:

- benim ile *with me* bunun gibi *like this*  
 onun kadar güzel *as beautiful* sizin için *for you*  
 as she

Other words remain in the absolute form:

- babanız ile *with your father* bu adam gibi *like this man*  
 o kız kadar güzel *as beautiful* sizler için *for you*  
 as that girl

*ile* undergoes similar changes to *idi* (3.5) when suffixed, as it usually is. After a consonant it loses its *i*, and the remaining *-le* changes to *-la* with back-vowel words:

- benimle *with me* babanızla *with your father*

After a vowel, its *i* becomes *y*:

- babayla *with father* babasıyla *with her father*  
 annemle *with mother* annesiyle *with her mother*

An earlier convention was to combine it with a preceding third-person possessive suffix as an invariable *-lye*: *babasıyla* *with her father*. Though few still spell it like that, the form is not uncommon in conversation; many people who write *babasıyla* still say *babasıyla*. *ile* may be reinforced with *birlikte* or *beraber* *together*:

- Kızlarla birlikte müzeyi gezdik *Together with the girls we went round the museum*  
 Fatma'yla beraber tiyatroya gidiyorlar *They are going to the theatre along with Fatma*

*bununla birlikte* or *bununla beraber* 'along with this' means *in spite of this, nevertheless*.

*gibi* may take plural or possessive suffixes:

- bu gibiler 'these likes' *people of this sort*  
 O adam gibisini gördün mü? *Have you seen the like of that man?*

The several uses of *kadar* are more easily understood if one bears in mind that in origin it is a noun meaning *amount*. As a postposition without a following adjective it means *as big as* or *as much as*:

- baçak kadar bir çocuk 'leg-amount a child' *a child as big as a leg, knee-high*

After numerals it means *about*:

- On kadar uçak *about ten aircraft*  
 yirmi kadar gün sonra *some twenty days later*

*Bu kadar* means *this much* or *that's the lot*.

With an infinitive, *için* expresses purpose:

- Onunla konuşmak için geldim *I have come in order to talk with him*

Some uses of *icin* overlap those of the dative case:

Bunu sizin için/size aldım *I bought this for you*

It also translates *of* as in *What do you think of this idea?* **Bu fikir için ne düşünüyorsunuz?** Another sense is *because of*: **Onun için gitmedik** *Because of that we didn't go.*

*For practice* Translate into Turkish:

- 1 with that, 2 with that map, 3 a girl like Ayşe, 4 a girl like you, 5 a day like today, 6 a day as cold as today, 7 for us, 8 for the country.

## 7 Translation of *and*

The dictionary equivalent is *ve*, but as it is of Arabic origin its use is decreasing and the native resources of the language are employed instead. It is still used (a) before the last of a series of three or more words with the same grammatical function:

Annem, babam ve kızkardeşim geldiler *My mother, my father and my sister have arrived*

(b) between two adjectives:

akıllı ve çalışkan bir öğrenci *an intelligent and industrious student*

(c) to join two clauses:

Dükkanâ gitti ve kibrit aldı *He went to the shop and bought [some] matches*

Even in these uses, however, it can be replaced by a slight pause when speaking, or a comma in writing.

To join two nouns or pronouns, *ile* is used:

annemle babam *my mother and father* sizinle biz *you and we*

*De*, like *mi*, though written as a separate word is never accented, and is subject to vowel harmony, changing to *da* after back vowels. Originally *also*, it may be translated as *and* or *too*, sometimes *but*:

Okudum da anladım *I read and understood*

Okudum da anlamadım *I read but did not understand*  
Ben de gördüm *I too have seen*  
Fatma da sen de *both Fatma and you*

It emphasises a preceding adverb:

Şimdi de anladım *Now I have understood*

## 8 Adverbs

Turkish is not as fussy as English about the distinction between adjectives (which qualify nouns) and adverbs (which modify verbs). If your behaviour is good, you behave well; in Turkish, if your behaviour is *iyi* you behave *iyi*. The 'adverb' *pek* *very* is the same word as the 'adjective' *pek* *strong*.

Words used as adverbs may be repeated:

Derin derin düşündüm *I thought deeply ('deep deep')*  
Yavaş yavaş gidiyorlar *They are going slowly*  
Sık sık Ankara'ya geliyor *She frequently comes to Ankara*

In such pairs, the accent is on the last syllable of the first element. There is also an unaccented suffix *-ce* which makes adverbs:

güzel <i>beautiful</i>	güzelce <i>beautifully, properly</i>
sayı <i>number</i>	sayıca <i>numerically</i>
hükümet <i>government</i>	hükümetçe <i>on the part of the government</i>

ben <i>I</i>	bence <i>for my part, to my mind</i>
sade <i>simple</i>	sadece <i>simply, merely, only</i>
doğru <i>direct</i>	doğruca <i>directly</i>

Words which show the pronominal *n* before case endings show it also before this suffix: **bu** *this*, **bunca** *in this way, this much*.

**Türkçe konuşmak**, which we translate *to speak Turkish*, really means 'to speak in-the-Turkish-way'. Words so formed, by adding *-ce* to nouns of nationality, though originally adverbs, are used as adjectives or nouns:

Türkçe Sözlük *Turkish Dictionary*  
Türkçeniz nasıl? *How's your Turkish?*

## Vocabulary 4

pazar	Sunday
pazartesi	Monday
salı	Tuesday
çarşamba	Wednesday
perşembe	Thursday
cuma	Friday
cumartesi	Saturday
ad, isim (-smi)	name
at (-tı)	horse
artık yıl	leap year
ay	moon, month
bakan	minister
-e bakmak	to look at
bilet	ticket
buz	ice
carsı	market
çünkü	because
dünya	world
erken	early
eş	mate, spouse
ezberlemek	to learn by heart
gece	night
genellikle	generally ('with generality')

gerek, lazım	necessary
gezmek	to stroll, tour
gün	day
güzel	beautiful
hafta	week
harf (-fi)	letter of the alphabet
hava	weather, air, climate
issiz	lonely
Kıbrıs	Cyprus
koca	husband
konusmak	to speak, converse, discuss

ömür (-mrü)	life
piyes	play (theatr.)
posta	post, mail
saç	hair
soğuk	cold
sorun, mesele	problem
şey	thing
uçak	aeroplane
yağmur	rain
yatmak	to lie down, go to bed
yoksa	or, otherwise
yol	road, way, journey

## EXERCISE 4.1 Translate into English:

- 1 Bilmece: İstanbul'da bir tane, İzmir'de iki tane, Ankara'da yok.
- 2 Niçin bugün Adalara gitmiyorsunuz? – Çünkü hava güzel değil.
- 3 Bu sorunu sizinle konuşmak istiyorduk. 4 Eşimle ben dün Kapalı Çarşı'yı gezdik. 5 Sen Türkiye'ye uçakla mı geldin yoksa trenle mi? – Otobüsle geldim. 6 Bu akşam için üç biletim var, bizimle birlikte geliyorsunuz, değil mi? – Maalesef vaktim yok; yarın sabah Ankara'ya gidiyorum, bu gece erken yatmak istiyorum. 7 Yağmurlu bir gecede, iki atlı ıssız bir yolda gidiyorduk. 8 Ben ömrümdede böyle bir şey görmedim. 9 Bir haftada yedi gün vardır. Günlerin adlarını ezberledin mi? 10 Dünyada İstanbul kadar güzel bir şehir var mı? 11 Bu mektubu uçak postasıyla yollamak gerek. 12 Bilmece nin çözümü: i harfi.

## EXERCISE 4.2 Translate into Turkish:

- 1 My wife has gone to Cyprus in order to see her father. 2 Is that yellow-haired girl your sister? 3 My father and my brother did not like the new play. 4 How many tickets do you want to buy? – Five for this evening, four for Saturday evening. 5 Generally there are three hundred and sixty-five days in a year, but 1988 is a leap year, it has three hundred and sixty-six days. 6 The new minister is coming from Istanbul this morning by aeroplane. 7 This water is like ice; this water is as cold as ice. 8 Why are you strolling hatless [and] coatless in this weather? 9 Do you know that man? Why is he looking at us? 10 Unfortunately my husband does not understand me.

## Unit Five

## 1 Here, there, where?

The Turkish equivalents of these English adverbs are nouns. They are made by adding to the demonstratives (4.5) or to *ne* *what?* the suffix *-re/ra*, followed by the appropriate case ending. The accent is on the first syllable of the word so formed:

burada in this place, here	nerede in what place, where?
buraya to this place, hither	nereye to what place, whither?
buradan from this place, hence	nereden from what place, whence?

surada, orada in that place, there  
suraya, oraya to that place, thither  
suradan, oradan from that place, thence

As few of us are accustomed to using *whence*, *hither* and so on in speaking English, care must be taken to add the right suffix when translating into Turkish.

Where are you living? Nerede oturuyorsunuz?

Where are you going? Nereye gidiyorsunuz?

Where are you coming from? Nereden geliyorsunuz?

He is standing there Surada duruyor

He is going there Suraya gidiyor

He is leaving there Suradan ayrılıyor

Being nouns, these words may take any noun-suffix, for example

-li:

Sen nerelisin? – Ben Bursalıyım. Sen de oralı mısın? – Hayır, ben Iznikliyim. Where are you from? – I'm from Bursa. Are you from there too? – No, I'm from Iznik

or the plural suffix: *buralarda* in these parts, *oralarda* thereabouts; or the genitive:

Oranın havası güzel değil. *The climate of that place is not good*  
Buraların yabancısıyım. *I am a stranger in these parts* ('Of these parts, I am their stranger')

When they are the subject of a sentence, that is, when they have no case suffix, they generally take the possessive suffix of the third person:

Burası güzel. *This place is beautiful* ('this-place-of-it is beautiful', the 'it' being the scheme of things entire)

Burası neresi? *What place is this?*

Polis komiseri, "Buranın halkı kuzu gibi" dedi. *The police superintendent said, 'The people of this place are like lambs'*

Evləri kentin neresinde? *Their house is in what part of the city?*

Kentin orası çok pahalı. *That part of the city is very expensive*

Simdi surası aklına geldi. *The following point about it has just occurred to me* ('This-place-of-it has now come to my mind')

## 2 The suffix -ki

Though listed in note (b) on p. 11 among the invariable suffixes, it differs from the rest in being partially affected by vowel harmony, changing to *-kü* after a syllable whose vowel is *ü*. It may be added to the genitive or locative case of a noun or pronoun, or to an adverb of place or time. The resulting word is a pronoun or adjective meaning *who/which* is whatever precedes:

benim of me benimki mine

Osman'ın Osman's Osman'ınki (the one) which belongs to Osman

onların of them onlarınki theirs

odamda in my room odamdaki (the one) which is in my room

bugün today bugünkü gazete today's paper

burada here buradakiler those who are here

Case endings added to *-ki* are preceded by the pronominal *n*:

benimkinden from mine onlarınkinin of theirs

sizinlike to yours

odamdakini beğeniyor he likes the

one which is in my room

bizimkinde in ours

Oradaki şapka sizininki mi? - Benimki değil, benim şapkam yok

*Is the hat over there yours? - It's not mine, I have no hat*

Kardeşinizin köpeğinin adı nedir? - Onun köpeği yok,

*brother's dog? - He has no dog; mine's name is Karabash*

### 3 Comparison of adjectives and adverbs

daha more, en most

iyi good	daha iyi better	en iyi best
kötü bad	daha kötü worse	en kötü worst
uzun long	daha uzun longer	en uzun longest
çok much	daha çok more	en çok most
az little	daha az less	en az least

*Than* is expressed by the ablative: for *A* is better than *B*, it is enough to say *A, B'den iyi* 'A is good from B' (that is, A is good if we take B as our point of departure).

The *daha* is unnecessary in such comparisons, though it may be added for emphasis: *A, B'den daha iyi*. Its use is essential only to express *more* in the absence of a *than*, as in *I don't like that; this is better: Şunu beğenmiyorum, bu daha iyi*.

Further examples:

Ankara, İstanbul'dan küçüktür *Ankara is smaller than Istanbul*

Otelimiz, sizinkinden az pahalı *Our hotel is less expensive than*

yours

Bu kilim, öbür dükkândakinden daha güzel ve ucuz *This rug is*

*more beautiful and cheaper than the one in the other shop*

Bu kitap, şu kitaptan az yararlı *This book is less useful than that*

book

Daha ağır bir çekiç gerek *A heavier hammer is necessary*

En iyisi, burada beklemek *The best thing to do* ('the most good of it') is to wait here

Tarsus'taki kiliseler, Mardin'dekilerden sayıca azdır *The*

*churches in Tarsus are fewer* ('numerically less') *than those in Mardin*

Kenan, onların çocuklarından hem en büyüğü hem de en akıllısıdır. - Kendi kızkardeşinden akıllı mıdır acaba? *Kenan is both the biggest and the most intelligent of their children.* - *Is he more intelligent than his own sister, I wonder?*

Bence en güzel kokulu çiçek, güldür *To my mind, the flower with the most beautiful scent is the rose*

### 4 Intensive adjectives

Aside from the use of *en* to make superlatives (e.g. *Dünyanın en yüksek tepesi Himalaya'lardadır* *The world's highest peak is in the Himalayas*), there are two ways of creating intensive adjectives. The first is by repetition:

derin düşünceler deep thoughts	derin derin düşünceler profound thoughts
--------------------------------	--

However, there is more to this use than may appear: *yeni yeni fikirler* is not just *very new ideas* but *ever-new ideas*, while *güzel güzel çiçekler* is more than *exceedingly beautiful flowers*; the nearest English is *flowers each more beautiful than the last*.

The second way is to prefix a syllable resembling the first syllable of the word but ending in *m*, *p*, *s*, or *r*. This prefix is accented:

başka other	bambaşka totally different
siyah black	simsiyah jet black
kırmızı red	kıpkırmızı bright red
yeni new	yepyeni brand new
bütün whole	büsbütün entirely
doğru straight	doşdoğru dead straight
temiz clean	tertemiz spotless

### 5 Uses of the ablative case

The ablative indicates the point of origin or departure, hence its use in comparisons. Hence also its use with verbs denoting avoidance, separation or withdrawal (*from*). It indicates the cause from which

something proceeds:

Bu yüzden *for this reason*

Ondan korkuyorum *I am afraid of him (my fear arises from him)*

Bikim bu yağmurlu havadan *I'm fed up with this rainy weather*  
Toplantıya gitmedim, vakitim yoktu da ondan *I didn't go to the meeting; I had no time, that's why (and from that)*

It shows the material from which something is made:

Oğlan için kâğıttan bir şapka yaptım *I made [for] the boy a hat out of paper*

It translates *of*, as in: *one of the children çocuklardan biri* ('from-the-children, one-of-them'); *I have no news of him Ondan haberim yok; I am sure of this Bundan eminim.*

The ablative also translates *through*, *by way of*:

Buradan geçmediler *They did not pass through here*  
Pencereden bakıyor *She is looking through the window*  
Köprüye başka bir yoldan gittim *I went to the bridge by another road*

Elimden tuttu *He took me by the hand (elim tuttu would mean he took my hand)*

Selini telefonundan arıyorlar *Selim is wanted on the phone* ('They are seeking Selim through the phone')

Some adverbs are formed with the ablative suffix:

sonradan <i>afterwards</i>	önceden <i>beforehand</i>
eskiden <i>in the old days</i>	çoktan <i>long since</i>
sahiden <i>really and truly</i>	doğrudan <i>directly</i>

There are other idiomatic uses which one should look out for, such as:

Bu öğrenci matematikten tam not aldı *This student got full marks for maths*

Kavunları kaçtan aldın? *At what price did you buy the melons?*  
Onu hırsızlıktan yakaladılar *They have arrested him for theft*

## 6 Postpositions with the ablative

-den önce, -den evvel <i>before</i>	-den dolayı, -den ötürü <i>because of, on account of</i>
-den sonra <i>after</i>	-den beri, -den bu yana <i>since</i>
-den başka <i>other than</i>	-den yana <i>on the side of</i>

The present tense is used of activity that began in the past and is still going on, just as in French (which is why one may hear visitors from the Continent saying, 'I am in London since three weeks'):

İki aydan beri İzmir'de oturuyorum *I have been living in İzmir for two months*

Mart ayından bu yana bankamızda çalışıyor *She has been working in our bank since March*

**-den bu yana** must not be confused with **-den yana**: **Ben sizden yanayım** *I am on your side.*

## 7 The verb, future, future-past and future conditional

The tense-suffix is **-ecek**, to which are added the *I am*, *if I am* or *I was* endings. Remember that **k** between vowels becomes **ğ**. Here are the future and future-past tenses of **girmek (gid-)** to go:

gideceğim <i>I shall go</i>	gidecektim <i>I was going to go</i>
gideceksin <i>you will go</i>	gidecektin <i>you were going to go</i>
gidecek <i>he will go</i>	gidecekti <i>he was going to go</i>
gideceğiz <i>we shall go</i>	gidecektik <i>we were going to go</i>
gideceksiniz <i>you will go</i>	gidecektiniz <i>you were going to go</i>
gidecekler <i>they will go</i>	gideceklerdi <i>they were going to go</i>
	gidecektiler <i>they were going to go</i>

The future conditional:

gideceksen <i>if I am going to go</i>
gideceksen <i>if you are going to go</i>
gidecekse <i>if he is going to go</i>
gideceksek <i>if we are going to go</i>
gidecekseniz <i>if you are going to go</i>
gideceklerse <i>if they are going to go</i>

In the future of vowel-stems, for example **beklemek** to wait,

**anlamak** to understand, the change of vowel noted in the third paragraph of 4.1 is often reflected in the spelling: **bekliyecek** is commoner than **bekleyecek** *he will wait*, and **anlayacak** than **anlayacak** *he will understand*.

The negative and interrogative of the future are formed like those of the present (see 4.2, 3). In the negative, the change of spelling noted in the preceding paragraph is almost universal; **gitmiyecek** rather than **gitmeyecek** *he will not go*, **beklemeyecek** rather than **beklemeyecek** *he will not wait*.

<b>gidecek</b> miyim <i>am I going to go?</i>	<b>gitmiyecek</b> miydım <i>was I not going to go?</i>
<b>gitmiyeceğim</b> <i>I shall not go</i>	<b>gitmiyecek</b> miyim <i>am I not going to go?</i>
<b>gidecek</b> miydik <i>were we going to go?</i>	<b>gitmiyecek</b> miydik <i>weren't we going to go?</i>

We do not normally say *you will come and you will see*, but *you will come and see*. So in Turkish there is no need to say **geleceksiniz** *you are going to come*; it is enough to say 'about-to-come, about-to-see you-are': **gelecek**, **göreceksiniz**. This may be done with any tense except the past tense in **-di**, because that suffix is not a separable part of *to be* but an integral part of the verb. For the future conditional (*if you are going to go*), one hears not only **gidecekseniz** but also **gidecek olursanız** ('if-you-are about-to-go').

To avoid tempting fate, there is a tendency, when stating an intention even for the immediate future, to throw in **İnsallah**, from the Arabic for '*If God wishes*'. **İnsallah** is the likely response, especially, though not exclusively, from pious and conservative people, to a question such as: **Yarınki toplantıya gelecek misin?** *Will you be coming to tomorrow's meeting?*

## 8 Compound verbs

There are a number of verbs compounded of verbal nouns, mostly non-Turkish in origin, and the verb **etmek** (**ed-**) *to do*, on the pattern of **yardım etmek** 'to do help' *to help*. Though the language reformers have found 'pure Turkish' replacements for many of them, many are still in use, such as: **teşekkür etmek** *to thank*, **kabul etmek** *to accept*, **telefon etmek** *to telephone*.

The main accent in such compounds is on the last syllable of the noun, except when the verb is interrogative or negative or both, in which case the rules given in note (c) on p. 15 apply:

**Telefon ediyorsunuz** *You are telephoning*  
**Telefon etmiyorsunuz** *You are not telephoning*  
**Telefon etmiyor musunuz?** *Aren't you telephoning?*

When replying to such a question, there is no need to repeat the noun; if you are not telephoning you may simply answer: **Hayır, etmiyorum** *No, I'm not*.

When the noun is in origin an Arabic monosyllable, it is written as one word with the **etmek** and is subject to the rules given in notes 2, 4 and 6, p. 13-14

<b>af(ifti) pardon</b>	<b>afetmek</b> <i>to pardon</i>
<b>sabır(br) patience</b>	<b>sabretmek</b> <i>to show patience</i>

In the older language, other words for *to do* were used in such compounds, notably **eylemek** and **kılmak**. The former is now hardly used except in the expression **Allah rahmet eylesin** *May God have mercy on him/her*, when speaking of the dead, while the only compound verb in which **kılmak** is regularly used nowadays is **namaz kılmak** *to perform the rites of Muslim prayer*. It is in regular use, however, in the sense of *to make*, in expressions such as **Kanunları etkili kılacağız** *We shall make the laws effective*.

*For practice* Match the beginnings of sentences in the left-hand column with the ends of sentences in the right-hand column, then translate them into English.

- |                           |     |                            |
|---------------------------|-----|----------------------------|
| 1 Kızkardeşin seni        | (a) | gitmiyecek miydin?         |
| 2 Londra'dan Ankara'ya    | (b) | parası yok da ondan.       |
| Türk                      |     |                            |
| 3 Mehmet candedir. namaz  | (c) | yapıyor.                   |
| 4 Şubat ayından beri      | (d) | gemimizi bekliyorlardı.    |
| 5 İstanbul Festivaline    | (e) | Hava Yollarıyla geldik.    |
| 6 Güzel güzel Honolulu'lu | (f) | kılıyor.                   |
| kızlar                    |     |                            |
| 7 Tiyatroya gitmiyor      | (g) | yepyeni bir evde oturuyor. |
| 8 Çocuk çok gürlütlü      | (h) | telefonundan arıyordu.     |

## 9 It's raining

Turkish always supplies a subject for *yağmak* to rain and *gürlemek* to thunder:

yağmur yağıyor	'rain is raining'	it's raining
dolu yağıyor	'hail is raining'	it's hailing
kar yağıyor	'snow is raining'	it's snowing
gök gürliyor	'sky is thundering'	it's thundering

## 10 Ordinal numerals

Ordinal numerals are formed by adding *-nci* to cardinal numerals ending in a vowel, *-inci* to those ending in a consonant:

birinci	<i>first</i>	on birinci	<i>eleventh</i>
ikinci	<i>second</i>	yirminci	<i>twentieth</i>
üçüncü	<i>third</i>	otuzuncu	<i>thirtieth</i>
dördüncü	<i>fourth</i>	kırkıncı	<i>fortieth</i>
beşinci	<i>fifth</i>	ellinci	<i>fiftieth</i>
altıncı	<i>sixth</i>	altmışncı	<i>sixtieth</i>
yedinci	<i>seventh</i>	yüzüncü	<i>hundredth</i>
sekizinci	<i>eighth</i>	yüz beşinci	<i>hundred and fifth</i>
dokuzuncu	<i>ninth</i>	bininci	<i>thousandth</i>
onuncu	<i>tenth</i>	bin birinci	<i>thousand and first</i>

Besides *birinci*, *ilk* is used for *first*, *primary*. *Last* is *son*, which as a noun means *end*. For *nth*, mathematicians use *n-inci*, pronounced as if it were written *eninci*.

Just as we abbreviate *first*, *second*, *third*, etc. to *1st*, *2nd*, *3rd*, etc., the Turkish equivalents may be found abbreviated to *1inci*, *2nci*, *3üncü*, or *1ci*, *2ci*, *3cü*, and so on. However, the commonest practice is to place a full stop after the numeral: *1., 2., 3.*

With names of sovereigns, roman figures are used: *Mehmet II.*, (pronounced *İkinci Mehmet*). Some writers have the logical but at first sight confusing habit of putting the figure first: *II. Mehmet*. This is the normal practice with names of regular events, such as congresses and fairs: *III. İstanbul Sergisi Third İstanbul Exhibition*.

## 11 Fractions

There are three ways of saving *half*:

*bugük* means *and a half*: *iki bugük two and a half*, *kırk dokuz bugük forty-nine and a half*.  
*yarı half* is used:  
 (a) as a noun:

Şu kitapların yarısı Türkçe *Half of those books are Turkish*  
 gece yarısı ('night its-half') *midnight*

(b) as an adjective:

yarı gece *midnight*  
 yarı yolda bırakmak ('to leave at half-way') *to leave in the lurch*

(c) as an adverb:

yarı deli *half-mad*      yarı pişmiş *half-cooked*

*yarım half* is an adjective:

bir yarım saat *a bir yarım elma a yarımada* ('half-  
*half-hour half-apple island*') *peninsula*

Other fractions are put in the form 'one in four', 'three in seven':  
*dörtte bir 1/4; yedide üç 3/7*. There is an old word for *quarter* – *geyrek* – but it is used nowadays only in the sense of a *quarter-hour*.

Note these examples:

Paranın onda dokuzu 'of-the-money, in-ten its-nine' *nine-tenths of the money*  
 Köylerimizin yüzde altmışı *Sixty percent of our villages*

As the *yüzde* ('in hundred') comes first, so too does the percentage sign: *köylerimizin %60ı*.

## 12 One each

Distributive numerals are formed by adding *-er* to numbers ending in a consonant, *-şer* to those ending in a vowel: *birer, ikişer, üçer, dörder, beşer, altışar*, etc.

Çocuklara bir elma verdim *I Çocuklara birer elma verdim*  
*gave the children an apple I gave the children an apple*  
 each

*Half each* is irregular: *varımsar*.



With multiples of a hundred or thousand, the suffix is usually added not to the **yüz** or **bin**, but to the preceding number. With millions, it is invariably added to the preceding number.

From Kaç *How many?* comes Kaçar *How many each?*

Further examples:

Bizden altmış yediser sterlin aldı *He took £67 from each of us*  
Biri buçuk sayfa yazacaksınız *You will each write one and a half*

pages

İlimde kız erkek biner öğrencili iki tane teknisyen okulu var *In our province there are two schools for technicians, each having a thousand students, girls and boys*

Üniversitenin öğrenci yurtlarına dörder milyon lira verdi *He has given four million lira to each of the university's student hostels*

Bu evler kaçar odalı? *How many rooms each do these houses have?* ('. . . are how-many-each roomed?')

Hayvanlar, Nuh gemisine ikiser ikiser girdi *The animals went into the Ark ('The Noah-ship') two by two*

*One by one is usually teker teker (from tek single).*

### Vocabulary 5

acaba <i>I wonder</i>	konu <i>topic</i>
-den bahsetmek <i>to speak of, discuss</i>	köpek <i>dog</i>
başarmak <i>to succeed, accomplish</i>	köşe <i>corner</i>
-den bıkılmak <i>to be fed up with</i>	lokanta <i>restaurant</i>
çalışmak <i>to work; (-e) to try to</i>	meclis <i>assembly</i>
çiçek <i>flower</i>	millet (-ti), ulus <i>nation</i>
durum, vaziyet <i>position, situation</i>	namaz (Muslim) <i>prayer</i>
ekonomik <i>economic</i>	öneri, teklif <i>proposal</i>
geniş <i>wide, spacious</i>	resim (-smi) <i>picture</i>
koku <i>smell, scent</i>	siyah, kara * <i>black</i>
	sonunda, nihayet <i>at last</i>
	tatil <i>holiday</i>
	tiyatro <i>theatre</i>

\* Besides kara *black* there is a noun kara meaning *land*: kara kuvvetleri *land forces*; kara suları *territorial waters*. Kara kuşlar *black birds*, kara kuşları *land-birds*.

toplantı *meeting* yaz *summer*  
-e yardım etmek *to help*

EXERCISE 5.1 Translate into English:

- 1 Çalışacak, yorulacak, sonunda başaracaksınız. 2 Oradaki siyah otomobil kimin? – Bilmiyorum, herhalde benimki değil, benim otomobilimi evde bıraktım, taksi ile geldim. 3 Arkadaşınız nerelei? – O, benim gibi, Londra'da. 4 Yakında Türkiye'ye gidecek-siniz? – Pek yakında değil, yaz tatilinden sonra gitmek niyetindeyiz (3.1). 5 Babanız bugünkü trenle mi gidiyor, yoksa yarına mı kalıyor? 6 İstanbul hem en büyük, hem de en güzel kentimizdir. 7 Şu resim, benim odamdakinden büyüktür, değil mi? – Evet, fakat odadaki daha güzel. 8 Niçin oturdun da bana yardım etmedin? 9 Bir yıldan beri dört odalı geniş bahçeli bir ev arıyorsunuz, sonunda bulduk. 10 Büyük Millet Meclisi bu öneriyi kabul sonunda edecek mi acaba? – Etmeyecek.

EXERCISE 5.2 Translate into Turkish:

- 1 I have an important meeting tomorrow morning. On account of this, I shall not drink this evening. 2 What is the man in the corner doing, I wonder? – He is praying. 3 Why did the Grand National Assembly not accept the minister's motion? 4 After the theatre, we went to the city's best restaurant. 5 Of those two women, the one in yellow is Remzi's wife. 6 She took the child by the hand and they went out together through the gate. 7 Of the pupils in this school, Ali is the least hard-working and the most intelligent. 8 Were we not going to discuss this topic at today's meeting? 9 The most beautifully scented flowers are not here, they are in that part of the garden. 10 Twenty-five percent of the books in your room belong to me ('are of me').

## Unit Six

## 1 The verb, aorist

The aorist ('unbounded') tenses express habitual doing or readiness and willingness to do, as in 'We go anywhere, do anything'. For a fuller explanation see note 3. The tense-suffix is *r*, added directly to stems ending in a vowel:

anlamak	to understand	anlar	he understands
taşımak	to carry	taşır	he carries
demek	to say	der	he says

With consonant-stems, a vowel is inserted before the *r* in accordance with the following rules:

Consonant-stems of one syllable add **-er** or **-ar**:

etmek	to do	eder	he does
girmek	to go	gider	he goes
çıkınak	to go out/up	çıkır	he goes out/up
sormak	to ask	sorar	he asks

Some of the commonest verbs in the language, however, display the fourfold harmony:

-ir:	bilmek to know, gelmek to come, vermek to give: <b>bilir, gelir, verir</b>
-ür:	görmek to see, ölmek to die: <b>görür, ölür</b>
-ır:	almak to take, kalmak to remain, sanmak to suppose: <b>alır, kalır, sanır</b>
-ur:	bulmak to find, durmak to stand, olmak to become, be, vurmak to strike: <b>bulur, durur, olur, vurur</b>

Consonant-stems of more than one syllable also display the fourfold harmony:

getirmek to bring	getirir	kullanmak to use	kullanır
öksürmek to cough	öksürür	dokunmak to touch	dokunur

To the aorist base are added the *I am/if I am/I was* endings, with the exception of **-dir**:

görürüm I see	görürdüm I used to see
görürsün you see	görürdün you used to see
görür he sees	görüdü he used to see
görürüz we see	görürdük we used to see
görürsünüz you see	görürdünüz you used to see
görürler they see	görürlendi } they used to see
görürsem if I see, etc.	görürdüler }

Interrogatives: **görür müsünüz do you see? görür müydük used we (did we use) to see?**

## 2 The verb, aorist negative

Unlike other tenses, the negative of the aorist is formed by adding to the negative stem not the tense-suffix *r* but *z*, which is omitted in the first person singular and plural. The following models should therefore be learned by heart.

gelmem I do not come	gelmezdim I used not to come
gelmezsin you do not come	gelmezdin you used not to come
gelmez he does not come	gelmezdi he used not to come
gelmeyiz we do not come	gelmezdik we used not to come
gelmezsiniz you do not come	gelmezdiniz you used not to come

gelmezler they do not come	gelmezlerdi } they used not to come
gelmezsen if I do not come	gelmezdi } come

The interrogative is formed regularly, by putting *mi* and the appropriate *I am/I was* ending after the negative tense-base:

gelmez miyim? do I not come?	gelmez miydim? used I not to come?
bakmaz mıyım? do I not look?	bakmaz mıydım? used I not to look?

### 3 Uses of the aorist

The basic sense of the aorist is 'in principle I do', 'in general I do', whereas the present means 'I actually do'. So, taking as an example *okunmak to read*, *okurum* implies that I am capable of reading, that I am prepared to read, but it does not necessarily imply that I ever do read and certainly not that I am reading now; to express that, I have to say *okuyorum*.

Hence the use of the aorist in polite requests:

Bana bir kibrit verir misiniz? *Will you give me a match?* – Evet, veririm *Yes, I will*

and in promises:

Gelirim dedim mi, gelirim ben "I'll come" did I say? I'll come'  
*If I say I'll come, then I'll come*

and in proverbs:

It ürür kevan yürür *The dogs howl, the caravan goes on (ürür is the aorist of yürümek to howl)*

Sometimes, the present and aorist tenses seem to be used interchangeably (e.g. *biliyorum* or *bilirim I know*), but as a rough guide:

<i>okuyorum I am reading, I do read</i>	<i>okuyordum I was reading</i>
<i>okurum I read, I am a reader,</i>	<i>okurdum I used to read,</i>
<i>I shall read</i>	<i>I would read</i>

A number of useful expressions are formed with the aorist:

*teşekkür ederim thank you; affedersiniz 'you are ready to forgive' I beg your pardon; olur 'it happens' it is possible, all right, O.K.; olmaz 'it does not happen' it's not on, it won't do.*

### 4 While

The word used is *iken*, properly *while being*; the *i* being the abraded stem of the ancient verb *ermek to be*. It may be suffixed, as an invariable and unaccented *-ken* after consonants, *-yken* after vowels.

It may follow a tense-base, most often that of the aorist, as in the first examples:

Üsküdar'a gider iken bir mendil buldum (line from an old song)  
*While going to Üsküdar, I found a handkerchief*  
O hiç sarap içmezken dün akşam bir şişe içti *While he never drinks wine, yesterday evening he drank a bottle*  
Otobüse binerken Fatma'yı gördük *As we were boarding the bus we saw Fatma*  
Ben çocukken çocuk gibi düşünürdüm *When I was a child I thought as a child*  
Siz Ankaralıdayken biz Bursa'ya gittik *While you were in Ankara, we went to Bursa*  
Vaktiniz varken niçin bu yazıyı okumazsınız? *While you have the time, why won't you read this article?*

### 5 As soon as

This may be expressed by using the positive and negative aorist bases together:

Ben odaya girer girmez, telefon çaldı *As soon as I entered the room, the telephone rang* ('I entering not-entering', i.e. when I was on the dividing line between entering and not entering)  
Mektubunuzu alır almaz babama gösterdim *As soon as I received your letter I showed it to my father*

Notice in the second example that the 'I' of 'I received' is not expressed but has to be extracted from the *-dim* of the main verb. Nor is the 'it' expressed; the object of a verb is often not stated when it is clear from the context:

Bana arabayı gösterdi, beğenmedim, almadım *He showed me the car, I didn't like [it], I didn't buy [it]*

Not every instance of the combination of the positive and negative aorist bases has this meaning. *Ben pilav ister istemez garson getirdi* does indeed mean *As soon as I asked for pilaff, the waiter brought it*; but *Bu iş ister istemez olacak* means *This business is going to happen, like it or not*; and *olur olmaz*, while it may mean *as soon as it happens*, as an adjective means *any old, just any*:

Bu, olur olmaz adamın kârı değil *This isn't a job for just anybody*

## 6 The suffix -ci

Like our -ist, -ci denotes occupation, profession or creed:

süt milk	sütçü milkman
kapı door, gate	kapıcı porter, janitor
eski old	eskici rag-and-bone man
dokuma weaving	dokumacı weaver
spor sports	sporcu sportsman
yol road, journey	yolcu traveller
yalan falsehood, lie	yalancı liar
inat obstinacy	inatçı pig-headed
milliyet nationality	milliyetçi nationalist
Esperanto Esperanto	Esperantocu Esperantist
ne? what?	neçi? of what profession?

## 7 The suffix -lik

The most important use of -lik is to make abstract nouns:

güzel beautiful	güzellik beauty
çocuk child	çocukluk childhood, childishness
akılsız unintelligent, stupid	akılsızlık stupidity
sıcak hot	sıcaklık heat
asker soldier	askerlik military service
yolcu traveller	yolculuk travel, journey
bir one	birlik unit, unity, union
milliyetçi nationalist	milliyetçilik nationalism
dokumacı weaver	dokumacılık the weaver's trade
kim? who?	kimlik identity

Another common use is to make adjectives and nouns from numerical expressions:

bin thousand:	bir binlik a thousand-lira note
kişi person, yemek food:	üç kişilik yemek food for three people
posta pulu postage stamp:	yüz liralık posta pulları hundred-lira stamps
ayrı separate:	bir yıllık bir ayrılık a one-year separation

gün day: iki günlük bir yol a two-day journey  
ihtiyar old: seksenlik bir ihtiyar an old man of eighty  
It makes adjectives and nouns showing the purpose for which something is intended or suitable:

kitap book:	kitaplık library, bookcase
odun wood:	odunluk wood-shed, -pile
korku fear:	korkuluk scarecrow
perde curtain, kumaş material:	perdelik kumaş curtaining material
gelin bride:	gelinlik kızlar marriageable girls
göz eye:	gözlük eyeglasses, spectacles
cehennem hell:	cehennemlik destined for hell or stokehold of a Turkish bath

Şimdilik 'for now' and bugünlük 'for today' are used as adverbs:

Şimdilik	Allaha ısmarladık (15.2) Goodbye for now
Bugünlük	bu kadar yeter That's enough for today

The English 'odalisque' comes via French from odalık [girl] for the [bed]room.

## 8 Uses of the dative case

The dative shows the recipient or destination, the point to which an action is directed. It is therefore used with verbs of motion and with adjectives conveying such ideas as proximity and conformity. Usually it may be translated as *to*, but sometimes our idiom demands a different preposition, as shown by the words in bold type in the English of the following examples. The last five examples show some Turkish verbs which take a dative, although their English equivalents take a direct object.

Bu çiçekleri size aldım	I bought these flowers for you
Resimlere bakıyor	She is looking <b>at</b> the pictures
Hastalara bakıyor	She is looking <b>after</b> the patients
Kalemi cebime koydum	I put the pen <b>into</b> my pocket
Ete tuz koydum	I put salt <b>onto</b> the meat
Sarabı buza koydu	He put the wine <b>on</b> ice
Sandalyeye/Yerime oturdum	I sat down <b>on</b> the chair/ <b>in</b> my place

Adresini zarfa yazdı *He wrote his address on the envelope*  
 Kardeşiniz size benziyor *Your brother resembles you*  
 Otele girdik *We entered the hotel*  
 İşimize başladık *We began our work*  
 Uçağa bindik *We boarded the aircraft*  
 Köye vardık *We reached the village*

## 9 Postpositions with the dative

-e göre *according to, suitable* -e ilişkin, -e ait *concerning, for, in view of*  
 -e kadar, -e dek *as far as,* -e karşı *against, facing*  
*until*  
 -e doğru *towards* -e karşın, -e rağmen *in spite of*  
 -e kadar also translates in as in *He will come in five minutes* (bes dakikaya kadar - see 8.5), and by as in *If you're not here by nine* (saat dokuzuna kadar), *we'll go without you.*

## 10 Verbs, transitive and intransitive

A verb is said to be used transitively when its action passes over to a direct object (e.g. *I ate a bun*) and intransitively when there is no direct object expressed (e.g. *When did you last eat?*). Some verbs are never transitive (e.g. *he exists, we intervened*).

In Turkish, when a normally transitive verb is used without a direct object, there is a tendency to supply an object in the shape of a noun from the same root as the verb:

Babam mektuplarını yazıyor *My father is writing his letters;*  
 Babam yazı yazıyor *My father is writing*  
 Bugün et yemedim *I have not eaten meat today;* Bugün yemek yemedim *I have not eaten today*  
 Eşim elbisesini dikiyor *My wife is sewing her dress;* Eşim dikmiş dikiyor *My wife is sewing*  
 Annem bana bir kazak örüyor *My mother is knitting a pullover*  
*for me;* Annem örgü örüyor *My mother is knitting*  
 Bira içer *He drinks beer;* İçki içer *He drinks*

## 11 Months of the year

ocak	January	temmuz	July
şubat	February	agustos	August
mart	March	eylül	September
nisan	April	ekim	October
mayıs	May	kasım	November
haziran	June	aralık	December

*In May is mayıs'ta or mayıs ayında. On the first of the month is ayın birinde 'on the one of the month'. On the first of May is Bir Mayıs'ta.* Roman figures are often used to show the month, and the thousands figure of the year is sometimes omitted:

5. xi. 920 = 5. 11. 920 = beş Kasım bin dokuz yüz yirmi 5 November 1920

The rule is to use capital letters for the names of months and days only in dates.

27 Eylül 1989, Çarşamba günü *Wednesday 27 September 1989*  
 Her çarşamba günü sinemaya gidiyoruz *Every Wednesday we go to the cinema*

Antalya'ya eylülde gidecek *She'll go to Antalya in September*

## Vocabulary 6

avlu	courtyard	giriş	entrance
ayak	foot	hesap	account
bakkal	grocer	kazanmak	to win
banka	bank	kıyak	generation
basınak	to press, print	lüften	please!
-e basınak	to tread on	manav	fruiterer, greengrocer
biraz	a little	meydan	open space, square
daire	flat, apartment	oyun	game
dakika	minute (of time)	ordu	army
değişmek	to change (intrans.)	öğle	noon
dinlemek	to listen to	portakal	orange
dolaşmak	to walk about, roam	radio	radio
faiz	interest (bank)	-e saptmak	to turn into (street)
galiba	presumably, I believe	savaş	war, battle
gene, yine	again, moreover	meydan	savaşı pitched battle

seyretmek (-ed-) to watch	ufak tiny
tam exactly, just	-e uğramak to call at, drop in
taraf side	on
tasarruf savings	uyuklamak to doze
uç end, extremity, tip	

## EXERCISE 6.1 Translate into English:

1 Siz bir yarım saat beklediniz, biz bir buçuk saat bekledik. 2 Ben gene belki yarım öğleden sonra uğram. 3 Galiba ayağınıza bastım. Affedersiniz, görmedim. 4 Her büyük kent, kuskaktan kusağa değişir. 5 Bu daire, tam size göre dir. 6 Aksama kadar dolaştım, ayağıma göre bir ayakkabı bulamadım. 7 Bu banka, küçük tasarruf hesaplarına yüzde kırk faiz verir. 8 Türk ordusu, 30 Ağustos 1922'de dünyanın en büyük meydan savaşlarından birini kazandı. 9 Esim, radyoyu dinlerken dikis diker. Ben televizyon seyrederken uyuklarım. 10 Beni burada bekleyeceksin, beş dakikaya kadar gelirim. 11 Telefon rehberini getirir misiniz? - Telefon rehberimiz ne oldu bilmiyorum. Dün akşamdan beri arıyorum. Bulur bulmaz getirsem olur mu? 12 Bu ufak portakalları kösedeki bakkaldan yırmişer liraya aldım. Meydan'daki manav biraz daha büyüklerine kırkar lira istedi, pahalı buldum da almadım.

## EXERCISE 6.2 Translate into English:

## Asking the way

- Lütfen bana yardım eder misiniz? Kapalıçarşı'ya gitmek istiyorum. Girişi ne tarafta?
- Girişi çok. O sağdaki sokağa sapacaksınız, sokağın sonunda bir cami var. Çarşı'nın en yakın girişi, Cami avlusunun öbür ucundadır, yani avludan çıkar çıkmaz göreceksiniz.
- Tesekkür ederim.
- Bir şey değil. Nerelisiniz?
- İngilizim. Oksfort'luyum.
- Öğrenci misiniz?
- Evet, Oksfort Üniversitesinde öğrenciyim.
- Güzel. İyi günler.
- Size de.

## Unit Seven

## 1 Participles and verbal nouns

Participles are adjectives formed from verbs. English has a present and a past participle: *the glory is departing* (present), *the glory is departed* (past). It is regrettable for our purposes that present participles in English have the same -ing suffix as verbal nouns. In Turkish they have different suffixes, so their distinct functions must be understood.

- (a) His brother is swimming      (b) His recreation is swimming

In (a), *swimming* is a participle, an adjective for which we may substitute other adjectives (e.g. *His brother is fat/energetic/late*). In (b), *swimming* is a noun, for which we may substitute other nouns (e.g. *His recreation is tennis/music/carpentry*).

The infinitive in -mek is one form of verbal noun; we may translate *düşmek kolay* as *to fall is easy* or *falling is easy*.

Participles are extensively used in Turkish where English uses a relative clause - that is, a clause beginning with *who*, *which* or *that*, e.g. *The man who is walking in the street, the letter which will come tomorrow, the light that failed*. In Turkish these become 'in-street walking man', 'tomorrow being-about-to-come letter' and 'having-failed light'.

## 2 Present participle

To verb stems ending in a consonant, -en/an is added; to those ending in a vowel, -yen/yan is added:

- olmak to become, be, happen: olan becoming, being, happening;
- who or which becomes/is/happens

olmamak (negative): olmayan (a spelling now preferred to *olmayan*) *not becoming, etc.; who or which is not/does not become, etc.*

yürümek *to walk: yürüyen walking; who or which walks yürümeyen (rather than yürümüyün) not walking; who or which does not walk*

The present participle represents action contemporaneous with the main verb, so sometimes it has to be translated as past:

Konusan adam susacak *The man who is speaking will fall silent*  
Konusan adam sustu *The man who was speaking ('the speaking man') fell silent*

Like most adjectives, the present participle may be used as a noun; instead of **bunu bilen insanlar** *people who know this*, we may say **bunu bilenler** *those who know this*. Here are some more examples:

Kahve isteyen var mı? *Is there anyone who wants coffee?*  
çalışmayan öğrenciler *students who do not work; çalışmayanlar those who do not work*  
mesgul olan görevli *the official who is busy*

But the meaning is different with a pause or, in writing, a comma after the second word, to mark it as the subject:

Mesgul olan, görevli *The one who is busy is the official.*

### 3 Perfect participle

The suffix **-miş** is added to the stem: **görmüş** *having seen, who/which has seen; görmemiş* *not having seen, who/which has not seen.*

The English future perfect (*I shall have gone*) is translated by the perfect participle plus the future of **olmak**: **gittmiş olacağım** 'having-gone I-shall-be'.

### 4 Future and aorist participles

These are respectively the future and aorist bases (see 5.7; 6.1,2), which explains the use of the *I am/was* endings to form the future and

aorist tenses: **gelecek** is a participle meaning *about to come\**, so **geleceksiniz** means *you are about to come*. Similarly, **gelir** means *coming*, while **gelmez** means *not coming*, so **gelirsiniz** means *you come* and **gelmezsiniz** means *you don't come*. The two elements, the participle and the part of *to be*, never lose their separate identities. *I shan't come* is **gelmiyeceğim** but we may also say, with a rather different emphasis, **gelecek değilim** *I don't intend to come*. Likewise with the negative aorist participle: **bilmez değilim** 'not-knowing I-am-not' *I am not unaware*.

### 5 Uses of the participles

It must be remembered that while subjects usually precede their predicates, adjectives always precede the noun they qualify: **kız güzel** *the girl is pretty*, but **güzel kız** *the pretty girl*. This is as true of participles as of other adjectives:

bu saat çalar *this clock strikes* but *bu çalar saat* *this striking clock*  
kebab döner *the roast turns* but *döner kebab* *revolving roast*  
o sokak çıkmaz *that street does not come out* but *o çıkmaz sokak*  
*or simply* *o çıkmaz* *that cul-de-sac*  
zaman gelecek *the time will come* but *gelecek zaman* *future time*

To translate *who/which has been/will be*, the perfect or future participle respectively is usually followed by **olan** *who/which is*:

konusmuş olan adam 'the man who-is having-spoken' *the man who has spoken*  
konuşacak olan adam *the man who is going to speak*  
Almanya'dan dönmüş olanlar *those who have returned from Germany*  
bizi Türkiye'ye götürecektir olan uçak *the aeroplane which is going to take us to Turkey*

Note the following: **gelecek hafta** *next week*; **geçen hafta** *last week* (where one might have expected the perfect participle as in the next example); **geçmiş zaman** *past time*; **geçmişte** *in the past*; **gelecekte** *in the future*.

\*This is not the whole truth. See further 10.1, third and fourth paras.

The next three examples illustrate a very common construction and will repay study:

adi Zeki olan kardeşim *my brother, whose name is Zeki*  
 parası olmayan bir genç *a young person who has no money*  
 babası ölmüş olan bir çocuk *a child whose father has died*

They are best grasped by starting with a statement: **Kardeşimin adı Zeki'dir** *My brother's name is Zeki*. To turn **adi Zeki'dir** into a qualifier, the verb **-dir** is replaced by the corresponding adjective, i.e. the participle **olan**. The statement underlying the second example is **Parası yok** *He has no money*. **Parası olmayan bir genç**, which looks as if it meant literally 'a youth who-is-not his-money', in fact means 'his money non-existent a youth'. The third example means 'his-father being-dead a child'.

## 6 Interrogatives

Some of these have been mentioned already but no harm will be done by recapitulating. **Ne?** *What?* figures in a good many:

**nicin?** (for **ne için?**) *why?*      **nerede?** *where?*      **nereye?** *to where?*  
**nereden?** *from*      **nereli?** *belonging to neçi?* *of what*  
**where?**      **where?**      **profession?**

It is also compounded with **kadar** *amount, zaman* or **vakit** *time, gibi* *like, cins* *genus, türlü* *sort, biçim* *shape, asıl* *origin:*

**ne kadar?** *how much?*      **kim?** *who?*  
**ne zaman/vakit?** *when?*      **hangisi?** *which?*  
**ne gibi/cins/türlü/biçim?**      **kaç?** (+ sing. noun) *how*  
*what sort of?*      **many?**  
**nasıl?** *how?* or **what kind**  
*of?*

**Kim** may take any case ending and also the plural suffix:

**Kimi gördünüz?** *Whom did you see?*  
**Kimleri gördünüz?** *What people did you see?*  
**Arabayı kimden aldınız?** *From whom did you buy the car?*

**Parayı kime verdiniz?** *To whom did you give the money?*

**Bu gözlük kimin?** *Whose spectacles are these?*

**Kiminle birlikte geldi?** *With whom did she come?*

**Kim, hangi** and **kaç** may take possessive suffixes:

**Kiminizi?** *'your-who? Who among you?*

**Hangimizin?** *Which of us?*

**Bu bavulların kaçınız?** *How many of these trunks are yours?*

**Aynı kaçında?** *'of-the-month on-its-how-many? On which day of the month?*

For *which of them?*, **hangisi** not **hangileri** is used (as the question presupposes more than one, the plural ending is superfluous).

**Ne** may take case and plural suffixes, though unlike **kim** it usually remains in the absolute form when the object of a verb: **Kimi gördünüz?** *Whom did you see?* but **Ne gördünüz?** *What did you see?*

The definite objective case **neyi** is used instead of **ne** (a) when a compound of **ne** follows in the same sentence: **Neyi ve nerede satın aldın?** *What did you buy, and where?* and (b) when you mean 'What specific thing?' The answer to **Ne okuyorsun?** *What are you reading?* may be an unhelpful **Bir kitap**, whereas **Neyi okuyorsun?** ought to elicit a more precise response.

Note the following:

**Nen var?** *'what-of-yours exists?'* 'what have you?' *What's the matter with you?*

**Neme lazım?** *'to-what-of-mine necessary?'* or **Bana ne?** *What's it got to do with me?*

**Neler gördük!** *What things we've seen!*

**Niye?** (for **neye**) and **neden?** are both used for *why?* The language reformers also use **neden** as a noun meaning *cause*, in place of the Arabic **sebeb**.

Sometimes **ne** itself must be translated as *why?* or *what for?* or *how?*:

**Ne karıştıyorsunuz?** *What are you interfering for?*

**Ne güzel!** *How beautiful!*

**mi** makes a question of the preceding word, which may itself be an interrogative; if asked **Ne istiyorsun?** *What do you want?*, you may choose to reply indignantly **Ne mi?** *You ask 'what?'*



## 7 Postpositional expressions

The sense of many English prepositions can be expressed by a roundabout phrase:

(a) before	(b) in front of
during	in the course of
by	through the agency of
beyond	on the far side of

Many Turkish expressions follow the pattern of (b). *Front*, for example, is *ön*:

*Önümde durdu* He stopped in front of me

*Önümüzden geçtiler* They passed before us

*Evimizin önünde iki çınar var* There are two plane trees in front of our house

*Bu noktayı göz önünde tutmak gerek* It is necessary to keep this point before [the] eye

It should be noted that in the third example, where a specific house is meant, *house* and *front* stand in possessive relationship, while in the last, where *eye* is metaphorical, the relationship is qualifying.

As postpositional expressions are mostly used after nouns and express 'place where' more often than 'place whither' or 'place whence', each word in the following list is shown with the possessive suffix of the third person and in the locative case. However, it must be remembered that all are variable in person and case, so that *aramızdan geçti* means *she passed between us* and *aramıza geldim* I came between you.

alt(-tı) <i>underside</i>	altında <i>beneath</i>
ara <i>interval, space between</i>	arasında <i>between</i>
arka, art <i>back</i>	arkasında, ardında <i>behind</i>
çevre, etraf <i>surroundings</i>	çevresinde, etrafında <i>around</i>
dış <i>exterior</i>	dışında <i>outside</i>
iç <i>interior</i>	içinde <i>inside</i>
karşı <i>opposite side</i>	karşısında <i>face to face with</i>
orta <i>middle</i>	ortasında <i>in the middle of</i>
ön <i>front</i>	önünde <i>in front of</i>
peş <i>space behind</i>	peşinde <i>on the track of</i>
üst, üzer- <i>top</i>	üstünde, üzerinde <i>on, above</i>
yan <i>side</i>	yanında <i>beside</i>

The noun *üzer-* occurs only with possessive suffixes, as in: *Anahar, rafın üzerinde* The key is on the shelf; *Bu ödevi üzerime aldım* I have taken this duty on myself ('to the top of me'). The other words in the left-hand column may all be adjectives as well as nouns. For example, *dış* in *dış ticaret* external trade is an adjective, whereas it is a noun in *Dışişleri Bakanlığı* Ministry of External Affairs. In this connection, don't confuse *dış* with *diş* (tooth).

After nouns, *üstü* with no case ending is used to mean *on the point of* or *in the act of*:

*akşam üstü* at the coming of evening, towards evening  
*yemek üstü* just at dinner-time

The compound *suçüstü* (*suç* = guilt) means *red-handed, in the act*:

*Hırsızları suçüstü yakaladık* We caught the thieves in the act

Two nouns followed by *arasında* between are joined by *ile*:

*köylü ile ağa* arasındaki ilişkiler 'relations which-are-in-the-interval-of peasant and landlord' *peasant-landlord relations*

*Ara* also makes compound adjectives such as *şehirlerarası* inter-city and *milletlerarası* or *uluslararası* international.

The following postpositional expressions are mostly used in the forms shown. For the suffix of the second and third, see 4.8.

bakımdan <i>from the point</i>	tarafından <i>by, through the</i>
<i>of view of</i>	<i>agency of</i>
<i>boyunca</i> along, throughout	<i>uğrunda, uğruna</i> for the
<i>gereğince</i> in conformity with	<i>sake of</i>
<i>hakkında</i> about, concerning	<i>yerine</i> instead of
<i>sayesinde</i> thanks to	<i>yüzünden</i> because of
<i>sırasında, esnasında</i> during,	<i>in the course of</i>

*Baş* head is used postpositionally to show proximity: *görev başında* on duty, *iş başında* at work, *on the job*; *silah* weapon, *silah başına!* to arms!; *yanında* beside me, *yanbaşında* just at my side.

## 8 The verb, imperative

The imperative is the form of the verb used in giving orders (e.g. *run!* don't run!).

In Turkish, the second person singular is the verb stem, positive or negative: *Koş! Koşmal!* To these forms may be added *-in* or *-iniz*, with *y* as buffer after vowels; the longer, the more polite:

*koş/koşun/koşunuz run!* *koşma/koşmayın/koşmayınız*  
*don't run!*

*De/deyin/deyiniz say!* *deme/demeyin/demeyiniz don't*  
*say!*

(Do not confuse this *de* with the *de* (*and*) in 4.7.)

The change from low to high vowel never occurs in the imperative: *begin!* is *başla*, *başlayın* or *başlayınız*, the second a never changing *ı*.

There is also a third-person imperative, made by adding to the stem the suffix *-sin/sün/sün/sun* for the singular, plus *-ler/lar* for the plural:

*gitsin let him/her/it go* *gitsinler let them go*  
*görsün let him/her/it see* *alsınlar let them take*

This *-sin* must not be confused with the identical-looking *you are* ending. The latter is added to a tense-base and never to the naked stem: *çekiyorsun*, *çekersin*, *çekteksin* *you are pulling/pull/will pull*, but *çeksin let him pull*.

The following useful expressions all include imperative forms of *olmak to be*: *Sağ ol* 'Be well' is an increasingly common alternative to the formal *Teşekkür ederim for Thank you*. Another, not quite so frequent, is *Eksik olma* 'Be-not wanting'.

*Gecmiş olsun* 'Let it be past' is used when hearing of someone's illness or other trouble (i.e. *Wish you better*).

*Afiyet olsun* 'Let there be health' is said in the sense of the French '*Bon appétit*'.

*Oh olsun* (don't forget to pronounce the *h*) means *Serves you/him/her right!* The literal sense is 'Let there be oh' (a sound indicating satisfaction).

### Vocabulary 7

*acele hurry, urgent*

*ayna mirror, looking-glass*

*bina building*

*bir de also*

*etmek to make*

*fark difference*

*gerek necessary*

*-e girmek to enter*

*gişe ticket window*

*hepsi all of them, all of it*

*-e hitab etmek to address, speak*

*to*

*ışte (reinforces demonstratives)*

*you see, precisely, here it is!*

*jeton token*

*kartpostal postcard*

*mağaza large shop*

*öbür the other*

*postane post office*

*PTT = Posta, Telgraf, Telefon*

*Post, Telegraph, Telephone*

*renk (-gi) colour*

*sarı yellow*

*sol left*

*söylemek to tell*

*uçak aeroplane*

*-e yaklaşmak to approach*

*ya you know, isn't that so?*

*yani that is, I mean to say*

*yazı writing*

*yollamak to send*

*yurt homeland, home*

*yüzey surface*

### EXERCISE 7 Translate into English:

A Bilmecce: O, odanın içinde; oda, onun içinde.

B *At the post office*

— Afedersiniz, acaba buralarda postane var mı?

— Var, şu soldaki büyük mağazadan sonra, sarı renkli, PTT yazılı

bina var ya, işte orası.

— Teşekkür ederim.

— Rica ederim.

(Postaneye girer, bir boş gişeye gider)

— Bir mektup Ankara'ya, iki mektup da İngiltere'ye yollamak

istiyorum. Bir de bu üç kartpostal var, birisi Amerika'ya gidecek,

öbürleri İngiltere'ye.

— Yüzey postasıyla mı, uçak postasıyla mı?

— Mektuplar uçak postasıyla. Kartpostalların, hiç acelesi yok.

Yani büyük bir fark ederse, yüzey postasıyla gitsin.

— Hayır, fark o kadar büyük değil.

— Öyleyse hepsi uçakla gitsin.

— Peki efendim. Kartpostal Amerika, iki yüz yirmi lira, İngiltere

yüz elli lira. Mektup yurtiçi elli lira, İngiltere iki yüz lira. Demek

hepsi dokuz yüz yetmiş lira ediyor.

— Bir de telefon jetonu istiyorum. Beg tane lütfen.

— Şehir içi mi, şehirlerarası mı?

— Şehirlerarası.

— Maalesef, kalmadı. Bir saat sonra gelecek.

— Teşekkür ederim. İyi günler.

— Size de.

C Bilmecenin gözümü: Ayna.

## Unit Eight

### 1 The verbal noun

Besides the infinitive in *-mek*, there are three other verbal nouns, ending in *-me/ma*, *-meklik/maklık* and *-(y)is/üs/ıs/üş*. These may take possessive or case suffixes, whereas *-mek* never takes possessive suffixes or the genitive suffix. Indeed, its only cases in common use are the locative (e.g. *bilmekte, olmakta*) and ablative (*bilmekten, olmaktan*). Its definite objective and dative cases are obsolescent, their places being taken by the same cases of *-me*. The process started with the front-vowel verbs, there being no difference of pronunciation between *bilmegi* and *bilmeyi*, *bilmeğe* and *bilmeye*. It is now extending to the back-vowel verbs, with *olmagı* replaced by *olmayı* and *olmağa* by *olmaya*.

As *bilmem* *my knowing* is identical in shape with the negative aorist *bilmem* *I don't know*, *bilmekligim* is preferred for the former where ambiguity might arise.

Remember that the syllable before the negative *-me* is accented and be careful to distinguish the following forms:

*gelme don't come*  
*bakma don't look*

*gelme the act of coming*  
*bakma the act of looking*

Besides being the negative suffix or the verbal noun suffix, *-me* can also be the *my* suffix plus the suffix of the dative. So *gelmem* can be *the act of not coming* or *to my coming*; *bakmam* *the act of not looking* or *to my looking*. In the former sense the accent is on the first syllable, in the second it is on the last. All three functions of *-me* may occur together, as in *gelmememe* *to my not coming*, *bakmamama* *to my not looking*.

In addition to the regular negative verbal nouns in *-memek*, *-meme*

and *-meyis*, there are two others, based on the negative aorist: *-mezlik* and a reduplicated *-memezlik*. The first makes a few abstract nouns: from *anlaşmak* *to understand* each other comes *anlaşmazlık* *misunderstanding*; from *saldırmak* *to attack* comes *saldırmazlık* *non-aggression*. For the uses of the second, see the end of the next section.

### 2 Uses of the verbal noun

The infinitive in *-mek/mak* remains in the absolute form when it is the object of *istemek* *to want* and *bilmek* *to know*:

*Yüzme* *istiyorum* *I want to swim*; *Yüzme* *biliyorum* *I know*  
[*how*] *to swim* (just like the French *Je sais nager*)

There is, however, a growing fashion for using the definite objective of *-me/ma* with *istemek*: *Yüzme* *istiyorum*.

As the object of verbs other than *istemek* and *bilmek*, the appropriate case of *-me/ma* is used:

*Yüzme* *yi severim* *I like swimming*  
*Büroya uğramayı unuttum* *I forgot to call at the office*  
*Sarabı buza koymayı unuttum* *Don't forget to put the wine on ice*  
*Van gölüne gimeyi düşünüyoruz* *We are thinking of going to*  
*Lake Van*

*Türkçe öğrenmeye çalışıyorsun* *You are trying to learn Turkish*

Like *-mek için*, the dative of the verbal noun expresses purpose: *Sizi görmeye geldik* *We've come to see you*; *Ayakkabı almaya gidiyorum* *I'm going to buy [some] shoes*.

The locative of *-mek* with the verb *to be* expresses *is/was in the act of* or a simple present or past:

*Millî futbol takımımız şimdi Roma'da oynamaktadır* *Our national football team is now playing in Rome*  
or ... *dün ... oynanmaktaydı* ... *was playing yesterday*

This use has spread from the literary language via radio and television into general speech.

The most important use of *-me* with a personal suffix is to express the object of a request, wish or order:

*Beklemenizi rica ederim* 'I request your-waiting' *I should like you to wait*

Esim, annesine telefon etmemi istiyor *My wife wants me to phone her mother*

Orada durmamamızı söylediler 'They stated our-not-standing there' *They told us not to stand there*

Verbal nouns in -me are also used:

1 As qualifiers: *okuma kitabı* 'reading book-*thereof*' *reading-book; bekleme salonu waiting-room.*

2 As adjectives: *yazma kitaplar manuscript books; dolma kalem (dolmak to be filled) fountain-pen; dogma büyüme adalı (doğmak to be born, büyümek to grow up) an islander, born and bred.*

3 As nouns, meaning the result of action. From *dönmek to turn comes dönme a convert*. Many people outside Turkey know what a *dolma* is, even though they may have learned the word in its Greek plural form *dolmadhes*. It is the result of filling, so a *stuffed vine-leaf* is *yaprak dolması (yaprak leaf)* and a *stuffed cabbage-leaf* is *lahana dolması (lahana cabbage)*.

The basic sense of the verbal noun in -ış is 'way of doing', as in *görüş way of seeing, outlook; yürüyüş way of walking, gait*. However, it is often used as a verbal noun with no obvious trace of that basic sense, e.g. *alışveriş 'taking-giving' commerce; gösteriş ostentation* (which makes the adjectives *gösterişli ostentatious* and *gösterissiz unostentatious*). Likewise from *kullanmak to use comes kullanış use, whence kullanışlı useful*.

The reduplicated negative verbal noun in -memelik, the sense of which is *persistent failure to do*, has two uses. The first is exemplified in: *Sakin gelmemelik etme, pişman olursun Mind you don't fail to come [or] you'll be sorry*. For the second, see 15.1 under *gelmek*.

### 3 Indefinite pronouns and adjectives

It will be seen that many of these incorporate the possessive suffix of the third person, e.g. *biri* 'one-*thereof*' *someone*. The 'thereof' may refer to a previously-mentioned class of people, as in *işçilerden biri one of the workmen* ('from the workmen one-*thereof*') or to an antecedent as vague as the 'they' of *they say*. The possessive suffix is doubled in *birisi, kimisi, hepsi* (for *hepisi*) and *şeysi* (for *seyisi*). Remember the pronominal n (e.g. *from somebody* is *birinden*).

Note the following:

*Başka, diğer other; başkası, bir başkası another one, someone else; başkaları some others*

*Bu haberi benden değil, benden başkasından aldılar They had this news not from me [but] from someone other than me*

*Bazı, kimi, kimisi some, someone* (the *ı* of *bazı* is not a possessive suffix; the accent is on the *a*):

*Bazı/kimi insanlar or bazıları or kimisi some people; bazımız, kimimiz some of us*

*Kimi çay, kimi kahve sever Some like tea, some like coffee*

*Biraz a little; birkaç a few, several; birçok a good many:*

*Biraz seker verir misiniz? Will you give [me] a little sugar?*

*Birkaç kitap a few books; kitapların birkaçı a few of the books; birçok ev/evler a good many houses*

*Biri, birisi one, someone:*

*Biri şu yana gitti, biri bu yana One went that way ('to that side'), one that way*

*Birisi beni telefondan arıyormuş I gather somebody is trying to get me on the phone*

*Böyle birisi yok There's no such person*

*Biri* may follow a singular noun in the genitive:

*adamın biri 'of [the category] man one-*thereof*' some man Herifin biri bize pencereden bakıyor Some chap is looking at us through the window*

*Bütün whole, all:*

*bütün gün the whole day bütün günler all the days*

*Çok many, much: çoğu most of it, most of them, most:*

*çoğumuz most çoğu zaman most of çoğu adamlar most of us the time men*

*Hep all, wholly, always, entirely, still:*

*hepimiz all of us hepimiz all of you hepsi all of it/them, everybody*

Hasta nasıl? – Hep öyle *How is the patient?* – *Still the same* ('like that')

Her every:

her gün every day	her yerde everywhere	her vakit/ zaman always
herkes everyone	herhangi any ('every which')	

It translates all as in *all three of us*: *her üçümüz*. Both of them is *her ikisi* or *her ikisi de*. *Her* is also the equivalent of *-ever* in *whoever*, etc. (See 12.1.)

**Öbür** the other (in expressions of time next but one); **öbürü** the other one:

Yarın öbür gün Bodrum'a gidiyoruz *Tomorrow [or] the next day we're going to Bodrum*  
 Şu kilimi sevmem, öbürünü yeğlerim *I don't like that rug; I prefer the other one*  
 öbür dünya the next world

**Şey** ('thing') is used for *what's-its-name, what-d'you-call-it*:

Şeyi gördük, Osman'ı *We saw what's-his-name – Osman*  
 Bu kapının şeysi nerede, anahtar? *Where's this door's what-d'you-call-it – its key?*

#### 4 Self

In addition to its adjectival use in the sense of *own* (2.6, end), **kendi** may take a possessive suffix to indicate *myself, yourself, etc.*, (a) in the emphatic sense:

Ben kendim böyle düşünüyorum *I myself think so; Bunu kim kıldı? – Siz kendiniz Who broke this? – You yourself*

(b) in the reflexive sense, when the **kendi** is usually repeated:

Kendi kendime "Olmaz" dedim *I said to myself, 'It won't happen'*  
 Kendi kendinizi yaraladınız *You hurt yourself*

There are two forms for the third person, **kendi** or **kendisi**, both taking the pronominal **n** before suffixes. **Kendi** is correctly used only

in the reflexive sense (e.g. **kendi kendini yaraladı** *he hurt himself*) and **kendisi** in the emphatic, but many Turks use **kendisi** in both senses. The plural of **kendi** and **kendisi** is **kendileri**:

Kendi kendilerini yaraladılar *They hurt themselves*

**Kendisi** is also a more polite alternative to **o**, for *he* and *she*. **Kendiliğinden** 'from its selfness' means *spontaneously, of his/her/its own accord*.

#### 5 Telling the time

Saat kaç?	<i>What's the time? ('The hour is how many?')</i>
Saat bir	<i>One o'clock</i>
Bire on var	<i>Ten to one ('To one there are ten')</i>
Biri on geçiyor	<i>Ten past one ('Ten is passing one')</i>
Üç beş var	<i>Five to three</i>
Üçü yirmi geçiyor	<i>Twenty past three</i>
Dörde dört var	<i>Four minutes to four</i>
Altya geçerek var	<i>Quarter to six</i>
Altyı geçerek geçiyor	<i>Quarter past six</i>

*At . . . minutes to/past the hour* is expressed by adverbial forms of **kalmak** *to remain* and **geçmek** *to pass*:

Bire on kala	<i>Ten remaining</i>	<i>At ten to one</i>
Biri on gece	<i>Ten passing</i>	<i>At ten past one</i>
Dördü dört gece	<i>Four minutes past four</i>	
Sekizi geçerek gece	<i>At a quarter past eight</i>	
Dokuzda geçerek kala	<i>At a quarter to nine</i>	

For no clear reason, **yarımda** ('at the half') means *at 12.30 p.m.*

#### 6 The **imış** form of the verb **to be**

In 7.3 we saw that when **-miş** is attached to the stems of verbs other than **to be**, it makes the perfect participle. But when it is attached to

the stem *i* of the verb *to be* it has quite a different function: it means 'reportedly is/was':

Babası fakir bir köylü imiş her father is/was said to be a poor peasant

Alternative translations are *It seems/seemed he is/was . . .* and *I gather that he is/was . . .* If someone says to you, "Enayisin" 'You are an idiot' and you ask, "Niçin enayiyim?" you may get a rude answer on the lines of 'Because you were born an idiot'. You may avoid this by asking, "Niçin enayi imişim?" 'Why am I allegedly an idiot?'

As with *idim* and *isem* (3.5), the initial *i* may be dropped and the *-miş/müş/mıs/muş* (or, after a vowel, *-ymiş*, etc.) suffixed: *Babası fakir bir köylüymüş*.

Like other parts of *to be*, *imiş* and its suffixed forms are never accented.

The present and conditional of the verb *to be* may be added to *imiş*:

Siz o zaman orada imişsiniz/oradaymışsınız. It is said that you were there at that time

Siz o zaman orada imişseniz. If, as they say, you were there at that time (not If they say you were . . .)

It may be used after any tense-base except the past in *-di*:

Hava güzel olacaktı. They say the weather is going to be fine  
Trenle geliyorlarmış. I gather they're coming by train

Dikensiz gül olmamış. They say there is no rose without a thorn

It may also follow the perfect participle: if I hear that there is a rumour that I have gone to China, I may say, "Ben Çin'e gitmiş imişim!" 'I'm supposed to have gone to China!' In this construction the *imiş* is usually separate, not suffixed, though *gitmişmişim* is possible.

It may be added to the present, aorist and future bases before *gibi* like, to convey that the action is reported as an inference and not as a known fact:

Ağlıyormuş gibi gözlerini siliyordu. He was wiping his eyes as though he were crying

## 7 The *-miş* tense of other verbs

This is formed by adding the appropriate parts of *to be* to the perfect

participle in *-miş*, etc. It differs from *imiş* (a) in being exclusively a past and never a present tense, and (b) in not invariably implying a lack of first-hand knowledge.

To understand its function, one must bear in mind that the perfect participle, which is the base of this tense, describes present state arising out of past action. *Orhan has gone* may be translated by *Orhan gitti* or by *Orhan gitmiş*. The first tells us what Orhan did; the second, the way he consequently is now. An old-fashioned English translation would be *is gone* rather than *has gone*.

If you have been standing over the pot while it was on the stove, you may say, "Yemek iyi pişti" 'The food cooked well', but if you take cognisance of it only when it has reached the table, you will say, "Yemek iyi pişmiş" 'The food is well cooked'.

If you say, "Kar yağmış" 'Snow has fallen', you yourself may or may not have watched the snow fall, but that is not what you are concerned with. What you are reporting is not what happened but what is now the case: that there is fallen snow. But precisely because you have not said "Kar yağdı", there is room for doubt on the part of your audience whether you have first-hand knowledge that snow has in fact fallen, so that the tense has come to acquire something of the inferential sense of the *imiş* tense of the verb *to be*. You may therefore say, "Timbaktı'da kar yağmış" meaning 'I hear it's snowed in Timbuctoo'.

If you say "Orhan gitmiş", you may be stating the fact that he is gone, or you may mean that you gather he has gone, either because someone has told you so or because he does not seem to be about and his coat is not on its hanger. If you want to make it clear that you are stating a fact, you can say either "Orhan gitti" or "Orhan gitmiştir". So with the third-person plural: *gitmişlerdir* can only be a positive statement that they have gone, whereas *gitmişler* has the same ambiguity as *gitmiş*.

The first and second persons (*gitmişim*, *gitmişsiz*, *gitmişsin*, *gitmişsiniz*) all have the same inferential overtone as *gitmiş*. However, when the endings of the past or conditional are added there is no inferential sense, as we shall see in 9.1, 2.

*-dir* can be added to the first and second persons of the perfect to assert as a fact something not positively known, as in a TV presenter's: *Konuk yıldızımızın hayat hikâyesini hepimiz okumuşsunuzdur* *Of course you have all read our guest star's life-story.*

## 8 Buyurun!

Buyurmak, the basic sense of which is *to command*, is defined in the dictionaries also as 'speak, come, go, pass, enter, take'. The explanation of this protean range of meanings is that once upon a time important personages were supposed never to do anything for themselves but only to give orders. Nowadays, if we want to report that somebody, however exalted, has made a telephone call, we say *telefon etti* 'has done telephone'. But when Sultan Abdülhamid did the same thing, the activity was reported as *telefon buyurdular* 'they have commanded telephone'. The usage survives in courteous speech, so *Buyurun!* 'Command!' may mean *Deign to come in/help yourself/sit down!*:

Bize buyurmaz mısınız? *Won't you deign to call on us?*

Ne buyurdunuz? *What did you say?*

Buyurun çayınızı *Please drink your tea*

Buyurun asansöre *Be so good as to enter the lift*

## Vocabulary 8

ancak *only*

asır (-sri), yüzyıl *century*

aynı *same*

bağımsız *independent*

bağlamak *to link, tie*

Balkan *the Balkans*

dahi *also, even*

deha *genius*

derece *degree*

deyim *saying, expression*

din *religion*

düşünmek *to think*

elde etmek (ed-) *to acquire*

eğilim *tendency*

faaliyet *activity*

fark *difference*

gelişmek *to develop*

göstermek *to show*

gülmek *to laugh*

Hristiyan *Christian*

ileri *forward*

-den *heride in advance of*

İslam, İslamlık *Islam*

kabiliyet *capability*

kavim (-vimi), budun *people*

keza, aynı biçimde *likewise,*

*similarly*

küçümsemek *to belittle*

medenî, uygar *civilised*

-e mensup *belonging to*

millet, ulus *nation*

millî, ulusal *national*

Müslüman *Muslim*

nüfus *population*

seviye *level*

sınır *frontier*

tarih *history*

türlü *sort, kind*

üstün *superior*

yaşamak *to live*

yaygın *widespread*

READING 8 *Is Islam incompatible with progress?*

Bugün nüfusu yarım milyarı bulan İslam dünyası içinde Batı dünyası seviyesine çıkmış, yaygın deyimyle "gelişmiş" tek memleket yoktur. Keza bugün Batı dünyasına mensup milletler arasında da "az gelişmiş" millet yoktur. Bağımsızlıklarını geçen asır içinde kazanmış ve milli sınırlarını ancak 20nci yüzyılda elde etmiş olan Balkanlı milletler dahi İslam memleketlerinin en ilerisinden büyük bir farkla ileridedirler. "Bütün Batı milletleri üstün kavimlerdir" diye düşünmek gülmek ise, İslam dünyasında yaşayan ve tarih boyunca her türlü medenî faaliyette kabiliyetini ve dehasını göstermiş olan milletleri küçümsemek de aynı derecede anlamsızdır. Aradaki farkı Hristiyanlık ve Müslümanlık arasındaki farka bağlamak isteyenler de olmuştur. Hatta bugün bile geri kalışımızın nedenlerini İslamıya bağlamak eğiliminde olanlar da az değildir.

(Adapted from Ekrem Üçyigit, *Din ve Biz* (Ankara, 1968), pp. 148-9).

## Notes

yaygın deyimyle 'with its widespread expression' in the term commonly used for it  
istiyenler . . . olmuştur 'wishers have been' there have been those who wish  
eğiliminde . . . degildir 'those who are in the tendency of . . . ' those tending to  
link . . . are not few'. As the plural subject olanlar is so close, there is no need  
for the verb değildir to be in the plural too.

## Unit Nine

### 1 The verb, pluperfect

The pluperfect is made by adding the *I* was endings to the perfect participle, as *olmuşum* (for *olmuş idim* 'I was having-become') *I had become*, *almışın* *you had bought*, *bilmiştik* *we had known*. Here is the pluperfect of *görmek*:

<i>görmüşüm</i> <i>I had seen</i>	<i>görmüşük</i> <i>we had seen</i>
<i>görmüşün</i> <i>you had seen</i>	<i>görmüşünüz</i> <i>you had seen</i>
<i>görmüşü</i> <i>he had seen</i>	<i>görmüşlerdi</i>
	<i>görmüştüler</i> } <i>they had seen</i>

It must again be emphasised that this tense has nothing of the inferential quality of the perfect in *-miş*.

The pluperfect is used in Turkish much more than in English, to show that one past action preceded another. Where we would say, *They bought the house twenty years ago and sold it yesterday*, a Turk would say, 'They had bought it . . .': *Evi yirmi yıl önce almışlardı, dün sattılar*.

There are two other forms of pluperfect, both colloquial rather than literary. One is made by suffixing *idim*, etc. to the past base, the other by suffixing *idi* to the past tense:

<i>gördüydüüm</i> <i>I had seen</i>	<i>gördümdü</i>
<i>gördüydün</i> <i>you had seen</i>	<i>gördündü</i>
<i>gördüydü</i> <i>he had seen</i>	<i>gördüydü</i>
<i>gördüydük</i> <i>we had seen</i>	<i>gördükü</i>
<i>gördüydünüz</i> <i>you had seen</i>	<i>gördünüzdü</i>
<i>gördüydüler</i> <i>they had seen</i>	<i>gördülerdi</i>

But you will not go wrong if you stick to the forms given at the beginning of this section.

### 2 The verb, perfect conditional

This is formed by adding the suffixed forms of *isem*, etc. to the perfect participle:

*Van gölünü görmüşseniz bahtiyarsınız* 'If-you-are having-seen Van its-lake' *If you have seen Lake Van you are lucky*

The above sentence could be made inferential with *immiş* but would look old-fashioned:

*Van gölünü görmüştümüşseniz bahtiyarsınız* *They say that if you have seen Lake Van you are lucky*

### 3 The verb, passive and reflexive

A verb is called passive when the subject does not perform the action but undergoes it. Active: *They signed the contract*; passive: *The contract was signed*.

A reflexive verb is one whose action affects no external object but reflects back on the subject: *I washed myself*; *He bestirred himself*.

The passive stem is formed as follows:

(a) To stems ending in any consonant but *l*, the syllable *-il/ül/ül/ül* is added:

<i>sezmek</i> <i>to perceive</i>	<i>sezilmek</i> <i>to be perceived</i>
<i>görmek</i> <i>to see</i>	<i>görülmek</i> <i>to be seen</i>
<i>yazmak</i> <i>to write</i>	<i>yazılmak</i> <i>to be written</i>
<i>tutmak</i> <i>to hold</i>	<i>tutulmak</i> <i>to be held</i>

(b) To stems ending in *l*, the syllable *-in*, etc. is added:

<i>bilmek</i> <i>to know</i>	<i>bilinmek</i> <i>to be known</i>
<i>bulmak</i> <i>to find</i>	<i>bulunmak</i> <i>to be found</i>

(c) To stems ending in a vowel, *-n* is added:

<i>yıkamak</i> <i>to wash</i>	<i>yıkılmak</i> <i>to be washed</i>
<i>söylemek</i> <i>to tell</i>	<i>söylenmek</i> <i>to be spoken</i>
<i>okumak</i> <i>to read</i>	<i>okunmak</i> <i>to be read</i>

There are three irregularities: the passive of *anlamak* *to understand* is *anlaşılmak*, of *ayırılmak* *to separate* is *ayrılmak*, and of *gevirmek* *to turn* is *gevrilmek*.



The reflexive stem is formed as follows:

- (a) To stems ending in a vowel, **-n** is added:

yıkanmak *to wash oneself*

söylenmek *to talk to oneself, mumble*

yüklemek *to load; yüklenmek to take up, load on oneself*

- (b) To stems ending in a consonant, **-in**, etc. is added:

gekinmek *to withdraw oneself, abstain*

bulunmak *to find oneself, to be*

It will be seen that in verbs whose stems end in a vowel or **l**, the passive and reflexive are identical. Where confusion might arise (e.g. *çocuk yıkandı* *the child has washed himself or has been washed*), the ambiguous form in **-n** can be made unmistakably passive by the insertion of **-il**: *çocuk yıkandı*. The reflexive sense can be unambiguously conveyed by using the active verb and the reflexive pronoun: *çocuk kendi kendini yıkadı* *the child has washed himself*.

In some reflexive verbs, the sense is to perform the action not on oneself but for oneself:

etmek *to do*

edinmek *to acquire*

geçmek *to pass*

geçinmek *to get along, to*

*make a living*

**Görünmek**, the reflexive of **görmek**, means *to seem, to appear*.

#### 4 Uses of the passive

When a verb is put in the passive, its former object becomes its subject: I caught the ball; the ball was caught.

In Turkish, intransitive verbs can be made passive; as there was no object to the active verb, there can be no subject to the passive verb, so such passives are said to be used impersonally:

Istasyona bu yoldan gidierter *They go by this road to the station*  
Istasyona bu yoldan gidilir *'going-is-done by this road ...'*

*This is the road by which one goes to the station*

Türk generi kaç yaşında asker olur? *At what age does the Turkish youth become a soldier?*

Türkiye'de kaç yaşında asker olunur? *In Turkey, at what age does one become a soldier? ('soldier becoming-is-done')*

The Turkish for *elective offices is seçimle gelinen yerler* ('election-by coming-being-done places').

The passive of compound verbs formed with **etmek** is made either with the passive **edilmek** or with **olunmak**: *tatbik etmek to apply, tatbik ediliyor or tatbik olunuyor it is being applied*.

Two common exceptions are **kaybetmek to lose** and **traş etmek to shave (someone)**, the passives being respectively **kaybolmak to be lost** and **traş olmak to be shaved or to have a shave**.

Reflexive verbs, like other verbs, may be used impersonally in the passive:

Burada yıkanılmaz *'here washing-oneseif-is-not-done'* *One may not wash oneself here*

Verbs meaning *to begin*, such as **başlamak**, are made passive when they govern a passive verb:

Raporu basmaya başladılar *They have begun to print the report*  
Rapor basılmaya başlandı *The report has begun to be printed*

To indicate the agent of a passive verb, the postposition **tarafından** can be used:

Pencere, çocuk tarafından kırıldı *The window was broken by the child*

This use was never very common, because Turks prefer the more direct **Pencereyi çocuk kırdı** *It was the child that broke the window* (note that the subject here is put in the emphatic position just before the verb). It is becoming even less common with the declining use of Arabic borrowings such as **taraf**.

The adverbial suffix **-ce** is regularly used in such sentences as:

Bu işe hükümetçe karar verildi *'To this work governmentally decision has been given'* *This work has been decided on by the government*

#### 5 Money, weights and measures

The unit of currency is the Turkish pound, the lira (abbreviated TL for **Türk lirası**). It was formerly divided into one hundred **kuruş** (**piastres**), each **kuruş** being subdivided into forty **para**. The **para**

became too small to bother with in the 1950s, the *kuruş* in the 1970s, though some dogged old-timers still say *Kaç kuruş?* for *How much is it?* Most people prefer the more realistic *Kaç lira?* One also hears *Kaç para?* This survival is justified by the fact that *para*, besides being the name of an obsolete coin, also means *money*.

The Italian *lira* is called *lirai* in Turkish. The English pound is *sterlin*.

The metric system has been official in Turkey since 1932. The units in common use are *santimetre* or *santim* (*centimetre*), *metre* (*metre*), *kilometre* (*kilometre*), *gram* (*gram*), *kilo* or *kilogram* (*kilogram*), *litre* or *kilo* (*litre*). The accent is on the first syllable of *metre* but on the final syllable of *metres* (the French *mâtresse*), which is how one may distinguish in conversation between the two possible senses of *bir metresi*: *a metre of it* or *a mistress of his*.

*Square* as in *one square kilometre* is *kare*: *bir kilometre kare*. This violation of the rule that adjectives precede their nouns is because the phrase has been lifted whole from the French (*kilomètre carré*). Similarly, *a cubic metre* is *bir metre küp*. The old land-measure *denâim*, formerly an area 40 paces by 40 paces, is now officially 1000 square metres — just over a quarter of an acre.

Two other old terms one may still come across are *arşın*, a linear measure of about 68 centimetres, and *okka*, a weight of 1283 grams. Some Turks call the kilogram *okka*, just as people in France still call 500 grams '*une livre*'.

## 6 A glass of water

In expressions consisting of a number, a measure and the name of a commodity, such as *a glass of water*, *a kilo of cheese*, *two boxes of matches*, *ten metres of curtaining material*, the *of* is not translated:

bir bardak su, bir kilo peynir, iki kutu kibrit, on metre perdelik kumaş

Compare the German *ein Glas Bier* (*a glass [of] beer*). Note the similar use of words meaning *sort*:

bir yeni tip uçak *a new type [of] aircraft*  
her çeşit insan *every sort [of] person*

The same construction is used with expressions formed with *dolu*

*full*, which with the third-person suffix means *-ful*:

bir kasık dolusu şeker *a spoonful of sugar* ('a spoon its-full sugar')

*A handful* is *avuç dolusu*, *avuç* being *the hollow of the hand*.

## 7 Uses of the locative case

Besides the obvious senses *at*, *in* or *on*, the locative case is used with words denoting qualities:

on bir metre uzunluğunda bir ip *a rope eleven metres long* (in the length of . . . ?)

o kılkıta bir adam *a man of that aspect*  
bal renginde kumaş *cloth of the colour of honey*

güvercin yumurtası büyüklüğünde bir taş *a stone of the size of a pigeon's egg*

Kaç yaşındasınız? *How old are you?* ('you are in the age of how-many?')

Otuz yaşındayım *I'm thirty*

## 8 Adverbs of place

ıçeri *inside*                      ileri *forward*

dışarı *outside*                      geri *back, backward, behind*

yukarı *up, upstairs*              öte *on the farther side, yonder*

aşağı *down, downstairs*       beri *on or to the nearer side, hither*

When indicating motion towards a direction, these may be used as shown above, or with the dative suffix:

Kapıcı ıçeri/ıçeriye gitti *The porter went inside*

Ablam aşağı/aşağıya indi *My elder sister came downstairs*

Biz geri/geriye döndük *We turned back*

Beri/Beriye geliniz *Come over here*

For *to the farther side*, the usual form is *öteye* not *öte*.

The final vowel of *ıçeri*, *dışarı*, *yukarı* and *ileri* is often lost when the locative or ablative suffixes are added:

ıçeride/ıçerde oturuyorduk       Dışarıdan/Dışardan geldiler

*We were sitting inside*              *They came from outside*

Yukarıda/Yukarda kimse yok İleride/İlerde *In future, in There's no one upstairs front*

These words may be used with the possessive suffixes:

Evin içerisi karanlık *The interior of the house is dark*  
Cephehin biraz gerisinde durduk *We stopped a little behind the front line*

They may also be used adjectivally, though for *internal* and *external* *ığ* and *ış* are used in preference to *ıçeri* and *ışarı*:

yukarı kat *the upper storey*  
suynun öte yakası *the further bank of the stream*  
Saatim beş dakika ileri/geri *My watch is five minutes fast/slow*

The suffix *-ki* (see 5.2) may be added directly to *öte* and *beri* and to the locative case of the others:

öteki goban *yonder shepherd*  
yukardakiler *the people upstairs*

The following expressions should be noted:

aşağı yukarı *more or less, approximately*  
ötede beride dolasmak *to stroll around*  
öteden beri *from of old*  
öteberi almak *to buy some odds and ends*

## 9 The postposition üzere

Üzere, originally *on*, is used with *-mek* to mean:

(a) *so as to, in order to:*  
Çocuklar okula gitmek üzere hazırlanıyorlar *The children are getting ready to go to school*

(b) *on condition that:*  
Yarın geri vermek üzere bu kitabı alıyorum *I am taking this book on condition of giving it back tomorrow*

(c) *on the point of:*  
Yola çıkmak üzereyiz *We are on the point of starting out*  
olmak üzere 'on the basis of being' occurs mostly in numerical

expressions, to mean *being* or *as being*, though it can usually be omitted from the translation:

İki tanesi eski, bir tanesi yeni olmak üzere üç tane elbise var *I have three suits, two of them old, one new*

See further the penultimate paragraph of 10.1.

## Vocabulary 9

aktarmak <i>to transfer</i>	kavgaya <i>quarrel</i>
behey <i>Hey there!</i>	kavgaya etmek <i>to quarrel</i>
bilmek <i>to come to an end</i>	mademki <i>since, seeing that</i>
buğday <i>wheat</i>	merak (-ki) <i>curiosity</i>
çare <i>remedy</i>	orta <i>middle</i>
çuval <i>sack</i>	ortalık <i>surroundings</i>
değirmen <i>mill</i>	öğütme <i>to grind</i>
deli mad	ses <i>voice, sound</i>
duymak <i>to feel, to hear</i>	surt <i>back</i>
hiç <i>nothing</i>	un <i>flour</i>
kapmak <i>to seize</i>	üşümek <i>to feel cold</i>
-e kapılmak <i>to be caught up in</i>	yorgan <i>quilt</i>
kaş <i>eyebrow</i>	yüklenmek <i>to take up, load oneself with</i>

READING 9: Two stories of Nasreddin Hoca, on whom all the best traditional Turkish jokes are fathered. Hoca is an old title of Muslim men of religion, and Hocam *My teacher* is still used as a mode of address by university students.

A Bir gün Nasreddin Hoca buğdaylarını öğütme için değirmene gider. Bir ara başkasının çuvalından kendi çuvalına un aktarır. Bunu gören değirmenci "Behey Hoca! Ne yapıyorsun?" der. Hoca, "Hiç. Ben deliyim" der. Değirmenci de "Mademki delisin neden kendi çuvalından başkasının çuvalına un koymuyorsun?" diye sorar. Hoca "O kadar deli değilim" diye cevap verir.

### Notes

Translate *buğdayların* as if it were singular: *his wheat*.

Bir ara 'one interval' at one point.

The function of *diye* is explained in 11.3.

B Soguk bir kis gecesi sokaktan kavgaclarin sesi duyulur. Hoca ile karisi pencereden disariya bakar, sebebini anlamaya calisirlar ama gürültüden hiçbir anlam cikmaz. Hoca meraka kapilir ve üşümek için yorganını yüklenir, aşığı iner, kavgaçlara yaklasir. Kaşla göz arasında kavgaçlardan biri Hocanın sırtından yorganı alır, kaçar, gider. Obürü de ortaktan kaybolur. Hoca çaresiz eve döner. Karısı evde merakla "Neden kavga ediyorlarmış?" diye sorar. Hoca, "Kavga bizim yorgan yüzündenmiş, yorgan gitti kavga bitti" der.

#### Notes

Kaşla göz arasında 'between brow and eye' in the twinkling of an eye.

For kaybolur, see 9.4.

Neden . . . ediyorlarmış? Why, did you gather, were they quarrelling? Without the -miş, it would simply mean Why are they quarrelling?

## Unit Ten

### 1 The personal participles

The participles discussed in Unit 7 are used when the relative pronoun in the corresponding English – *who, which, that* – is the subject of the relative clause, e.g. *the man who visited us, the shop which stands on that corner, the horse that neighed*. In any other type of relative clause (e.g. *the man whom we visited, the shop where I bought the coat, the horse that I fell off*), Turkish uses a construction which, though neat and logical, strikes English-speakers as one of the most alien features of the language. Indeed, this is the point at which some students' eyes glaze over and thereafter, however fluently they may learn to chat, they never reach the stage of being able to read a paragraph of Turkish with full comprehension. But it's really not all that hard: please read on.

For relative clauses of the second kind, Turkish makes use of two participles, one if the verb is present or past (e.g. *the house in which we live/lived*), the other if the verb is future (e.g. *the house in which we shall live*). For the first, we add to the verb stem the suffix *-dik/dük/dik/dük*, followed by the possessive suffixes (2.5). Thus from *oturmak to live*:

oturdugum ev *the house in which I live/lived*  
 oturduğun ev *the house in which you live/lived*  
 oturduğu ev *the house in which he/she lives/lived*  
 oturduğumuz ev *the house in which we live/lived*  
 oturduğunuz ev *the house in which you live/lived*  
 oturdukları ev *the house in which they live/lived*

The way to grasp this use is to think of *oturdugum* as meaning 'pertaining to my living' or, more concisely, 'of my living'. This has two advantages. The first is that it will impress on the learner the

timelessness of these forms. The second is that it will save one from attempting a literal translation of such sentences as *the shop where I bought the coat*; all that is necessary is *patlayu aldığım dükkân* 'shop of my buying the coat'. So from *yapmak* to *make, do, yaptığım bir hata* – conventionally translated as *a mistake which I make or made*, according to the context – should be thought of as meaning *a mistake of my making*.

If the verb of the English relative clause is in the future tense, the future participle in *-ecek/acak* is used: similarly with the personal suffixes and similarly it should be thought of as meaning 'pertaining to future doing' or 'of future doing':

<i>oturacağım</i> of my future living	<i>oturacağımız</i> of our future living
<i>oturacağın</i> of your future living	<i>oturacağınız</i> of your future living
<i>oturacağı</i> of his/her future living	<i>oturacakları</i> of their future living

So *oturacağım ev* is *the house in which I shall live* and *oturacakları ev* *the house in which they will live*. Here are some more examples:

Büroma gittiğim otobüs her zaman kalabalık 'The bus of my going . . . ' *The bus on which I go to my office is always crowded*  
 Dün gittiğimiz lokanta, Ulus meydanındaydı 'The restaurant of our going yesterday . . . ' *The restaurant to which we went yesterday was in Ulus Square*

Yarın Ankara'ya gideceğiniz uçak kalabalık olmuştur 'The aircraft of your future going . . . ' *The aircraft on which you will be going to Ankara tomorrow will not be crowded*

Herkes olduğu yerde kalsın 'Let everyone remain in the place of his being' *Let everyone stay where he is*

Oturduğunuz apartman pahalı mı? 'Is the block of flats of your dwelling . . . ' *Is the block where you are living expensive?*

Sana verdiği kitabı okudun mu? 'Have you read the book of her giving to you?' *Have you read the book she gave you?*

İstedigin kadar al 'Take amount of-your-wanting' *Take as much as you want*

The next three examples show how 'when' clauses are expressed:

Londra'ya gittiğimiz zaman hava berbat 'Time of our going . . . ' *When we went to London the weather was rotten*  
 Londra'ya gittiğimiz zaman hava berbat olacak *When we go to London the weather will be rotten*

If you would have expected the future personal participle in this last example, consider the next:

Londra'ya gideceğiniz zaman hava hep berbat 'When we are about to go to London the weather is always rotten

Like any other word having a possessive suffix, the personal participle may have a possessor normally expressed in the genitive. The third example below with the possessor (*keci cat*) in the absolute form, is a proverb and not typical.

Oynadıkları park 'park of their playing' *the park where they play*  
 çocukların oynadıkları park 'park of their (the children's) playing' *the park where the children play*  
 çocuklar oynadıkları park 'park of their (children) playing' *the park where children play*

Kedi bulunmadığı yerde fare başkaldırır 'In the place of its (cat) not-being, mouse raises-head' *In the place where there is no cat, the mice get above themselves*

In expressions of time, however, the subject of the participle, i.e. the possessor, remains in the absolute form even when it is definite:

çocuklar oynadıkları zaman elbiselerini kirletirler *When children (or the children) play, they get their clothes dirty*

With *halde*, the locative of *hal condition*, the personal participle means either *although* or *in a state of*:

Bunu bildiğim halde bir şey söylemiyorum 'In the condition of my knowing this . . . ' *Although I know this, I'm not saying anything*

Elinde bir bıçak olduğu halde kapıdan fırladı 'In the state of it (a knife) being in his hand . . . ' *He dashed out of the door with a knife in his hand*

Üzere (9.9) is used with the personal participles to mean *as*:

yukarda yazıldığı üzere *as is written above*; şimdi anlatılacağı üzere *as will now be explained*

With *yerde* 'in place', the future personal participle means *instead of*:

Orada bekliyeceğimiz yerde tiyatroya doğru yürümeye karar verdik *Instead of waiting there, we decided to walk towards the theatre* (lit. 'in place of our future waiting')

## 2 The personal participle as a noun

In the previous section, we saw how the personal participles are used adjectivally, to qualify nouns: *yaptığım* is 'the job of my doing', *the job which I do/did*. They have other uses:

- (a) as nouns meaning *the fact of my doing* and  
 (b) as nouns meaning 'that of my doing', *that which I do/did*.

Some examples:

- (a) Memnun kalacağımızdan şüphem yok 'In-your-future-staying pleased my-doubt non-existent' *I have no doubt that you will be pleased*

İşimi yaptığımı bilir 'my-doing my job is known' *It is [well] known that I do my job*

İşimi yaptığımı herkes bilir *Everyone knows that I do my job*

This is the construction used to express indirect speech:

İstanbul'dan yarın ayrılacağız *We shall leave Istanbul tomorrow*

Kendisine İstanbul'dan yarın ayrılacağımızı daha söylemedi *I haven't yet told her that we shall leave ('our future leaving')...*

Üç gün kalmak istediklerini söylediler *They said they wanted to stay three days*

Contrast this with the use of the *-me* verbal noun (8.2): *Beklememizi söyledi* *He told us to wait but Beklediğimizi söyledi* *He said we were waiting*.

A common use of this participle is with *için* *for*, *because of*, or in the ablative case, to mean *because of the fact of...*

Cevabı bilmediğim için/bilmediğimden sustum 'Because of/From my-not-knowing... ' *Because I did not know the answer I was silent*

In the locative case, it means *when/on doing*:

Haber aldığımızda çok kızdım *On my receiving the news I was very angry*

In the dative case, it means *instead of*, just as it does with *yerde*:

Okula gideceğine futbol maçına gitti *Instead of going to school, he has gone to the football match* (lit. '[in exchange] for his future going')

In the dative case with *göre*:

Bu sorunun cevabını bildiğimize göre, niçin soruyorsunuz?

'According to your knowing the answer of this question, why are you asking?' *In view of the fact that you know...*

- (b) Gazete okuduğum çok ilginç *What I read in the paper is very interesting*

Bize Rusya gezintisinde gördüklerini anlattı *She told us the things she had seen on her Russian trip*

In the following example, *inandığı* has the adjectival sense and qualifies *uzaklıkta*, while *yakalayamayacağına* (from *yakalamak to catch*, for the form see note 5) is used as a noun in the (a) sense:

Yaramaz çocuk kaçtı, adamın kendisini yakalayamayacağına inandığı bir uzaklıkta durdu 'The naughty child ran off [and] stopped at a distance pertaining to his believing in the man's future inability to catch him'... *stopped at a point where he believed he was far enough away for the man not to be able to catch him*

## 3 Negative sentences

**Kimse** *someone, person* in negative sentences means *nobody*, *no one* (like the French *personne*): **Kimse** *gelmiyor* *No one is coming*; **Kimse** *yok* *He has nobody*.

**Bir şey** *a thing, anything* is similarly used for *nothing*; a polite response to **Teşekkür ederim** *Thank you is Bir şey değil* *Not at all* ('It's nothing').

**Bir türlü** *a sort* in negative sentences means *in no way, no-how*: **Bir türlü** *anlamadı* *He didn't understand at all*.

**Hiç**, written as one word with a following **bir**, strengthens negatives:

*Hiçbir şey istemem I want nothing at all*  
*Hiçbir yere gitmezler They go nowhere*  
*Radıo'yu hiçbir zaman/yakit dinlemem I never listen to the radio*

In questions, it means *ever* or *never*: **Hiç Konya'yı gezdiniz mi?**  
*Have you ever/never been round Konya?*

It also retains its original Persian sense of *nothing*:

*Çarşıda ne aldınız? - Hiç What did you buy in the market? - Nothing*

*Bir hiç için kızdı He got angry over a trifle*  
*Onun gözünde hicim In her eyes I am nothing*

**Ne... ne...** means *Neither... nor...*: **Né Sinan'ı gördüm ne başkasını I saw neither Sinan nor anyone else.**

**Yok** *there isn't* is used colloquially for *Certainly not!* It may also mean *not at home*: **Siz yokken kardeşiniz geldi While you were out, your brother came.**

Turks do not shake their heads to express negation. The conversational Turkish for 'no' is any or all of these: (a) a slight raising of the head, (b) closing the eyes, (c) the clicking of the tongue with which we indicate mild vexation and which is written 'Tut!'

#### 4 Translation of *can*

**-ebil/abil** is added to consonant stems, **-yebil/yabil** to vowel stems. Vowel harmony changes the **e** to **a** after back vowels, but the **bil**, which is the stem of **bilmek**, does not change. The resemblance to our **able** is a useful aid to memory but is fortuitous.

*gelmek to come; gelebilmeK to be able to come*  
*geliyoruz we are coming; gelebiliyoruz we can come*  
*geldiniz you came; gelebildiniz you were able to come*  
*söylenir it is said; söylenebilir it can be said*  
*okuyacak mısın? are you going to read?; okuyabileceK mısın?*  
*will you be able to read?*

*okuyanlar those who read, okuyabilenler those who can read; yaptığım is the job I did/did, yapabildiğim is the job I can/could do.*

Negative stems may be followed by this suffix: **gelme-yebilirim** 'I am able not to come' *I may not come* (e.g. if the weather is bad) or *I don't have to come if I don't want to*. The spelling **gelmiyebilirim** will also be found (see 4.1, third para.).

#### 5 Translation of *cannot*

The **-ebil** suffix is not used for *cannot*; instead, an accented **-e/a** is inserted before the **-me/ma** of the negative:

*gelmemek not to come; gelememek to be unable to come*  
*gelmiyoruz we're not coming; gelemiyoruz we can't come*  
*gelmediniz you didn't come; gelemediniz you couldn't come*  
*söylenmez it isn't said; söylenemez it cannot be said*  
*okunayacak mısın? aren't you going to read?; okuyamayacak mısın? aren't you going to be able to read?*

*gelemeyebilirim I may not be able to come*  
*okumayanlar those who don't read; okuyamayanlar those who can't read*

*yapmadığım is the job I don't/didn't do; yapamadığım is the job I can't/couldn't do*  
*yakalayacağı the fact that he will catch; yakalamayacağı the fact that he will not catch; yakalayamayacağı the fact that he will not be able to catch (alternative spellings: yakalayacağı, yakalamıyacağı, yakalayamıyacağı)*

#### 6 Adverbial forms of the verb

This section deals with two of the adverbial suffixes that may be added to verb stems:

##### 1 **-erek/arak** *doing, by doing*

This shows action accompanying or slightly preceding that of the main verb:

*Açlık grevi yaparak öldü 'by-doing hunger-its-strike he died' He died by going on hunger-strike*



From *olmak* comes *olarak*, which may be translated *as, as being, for* or *by way of*:

Türkiye'ye ilk olarak geçen yaz geldik *We first came to Turkey*  
(*'it being first'*) *last summer*

Bunu sana dost olarak söylüyorum *I am telling you this as a*  
*friend*

Bana yol parası olarak beş bin lira verdiler *They gave me*  
*TL5,000 as fare-money*

With vowel stems, a *y* is inserted to separate the vowel of the stem from the first vowel of the suffix. For example, from *tekrarlamak* to *repeat*:

Her ikimizce de (see 4.7, 8.3 under *Her*) bilinen bazı noktaları  
tekrarlayarak söze başlayacağım *I shall start what I have to say*  
*by repeating some points known to both of us*

From *gülümsemek* to *smile*:

Gülümseyerek cevap verdi *Smilingly he replied*

2 -*ince/ünce/muca/unca* on doing, when doing  
This shows action just preceding that of the main verb:

Pencereden bakınca karşımda Adaları gördüm *On looking out*  
*of the window I saw the Islands facing me*  
Sizi görünce tanıdım *I recognised you on sight*

The subject may differ from that of the main verb:

Bahar gelince çiçekler açar *When spring comes, the flowers open*  
Yüzbaşı "nöbetçi nerede?" diye sorunca şaşırđım, dışarda oldu-  
ğunu söyledim *When the Captain asked, 'Where is the sentry?'*  
*I was surprised [and] said he was outside*

In all these examples the -*ince* forms could be replaced by the locative of the personal participle without affecting the sense: *baktığımda, gördüğümde, geldiğinde, sorduğunda*.

## 7 The reciprocal or cooperative verb

The addition of -*ş* to verb stems ending in a vowel and of -*ış/üş/üş/ış/üş* to those ending in a consonant generally conveys that the action is

performed by more than one agent, in cooperation or in opposition:

oynamak to play	oynasmak to play together
-e çarpmak to strike	çarpışmak to collide
dövmek to bear	dövüşmek to fight one another
görmek to see	görüşmek to see one another,
	converse

Not all verbs in -*ş* have this force: for example *gelişmek* is not 'to come together' but *to develop*; *yetişmek* is not 'to suffice one another' but *to grow up*. Some have a reflexive sense: *karmak* to mix, *karışmak* to mix oneself in, to interfere.

An example of a reciprocal verb used impersonally in the passive:

Arkadaşla dövüşülür mü? 'Is fighting-with-one-another-done with-friend?' *Does one fight with friends?*

## Vocabulary 10

ara space between, interval	-le karşılaşmak to be confronted with
biricik sole	
cisim (-smi) body	kısım (-smi) portion, part, section
çekim attraction	meydana gelmek to emerge, occur
demektir it means (11.3)	olay occurrence, event, incident
deyim locution, saying	saha field, area
düşmek to fall	süre, müddet period
gök sky	terim technical term
gökcisimi celestial body ('sky	tutulma eclipse
its-body')	uydu satellite
gölge shadow	yanışmak, aksettirmek to reflect
görünmek to appear	yeryüzü earth's surface ('earth
güneş sun	its-face')
ışık light	
ışın ray	
karanlık darkness, dark	

## READING 10 Some simple science

Bir gök cisminin araya başka bir cismin girmesiyle bütünüünün veya bir kısmının görünmez olması olayına tutulma adı verilir. Güneşli bir günde ay, güneşin önüne gelirse bir süre güneşi göremeyiz. Buna güneş tutulması denir. Başka deyimle ay, dünyanın çevresinde



dolarırken zaman zaman güneşle dünya arasına girer, güneşin ışınları aya garpar ve dünyanın üzerine ayın gölgesi düşer. Yeryüzünde ayın gölgesinin düştüğü yerlerde güneş tutulması meydana gelir. Bu yerler bir süre karanlıkta kalır.

Şimdi yeni bir terimle karşılaşyoruz, o da uydudur. Uydular, bir gök cisminin çekim sahasında bulunup onun çevresinde dönen daha küçük bir gök cismi demektir. Dünyanın biricik uydusu olan ayın kendi ışığı yoktur, o bize güneşten aldığı ışıkla görünür. Zaman zaman dünyamız ayla güneşin arasına girer, dünyamızın gölgesi ay üzerine düşer, yani güneşten gelen ışınlar dünyaya çarptığından ay karanlıkta kalır. Ay, güneşten ışık alamayınca bize de ışık yansıtamaz. Bu olaya ay tutulması denir.

#### Notes

Here is an analysis of the first sentence, together with a few other notes (a full translation will be found in the key).

The first step is to locate the subject, which will be in the absolute form. The first such word, *olması*, cannot be the subject because the word after it is *olayına* to its occurrence, the third-person suffix of which (the *ı*) calls for a qualifier, namely *olması*. The words *tutulma adı* are also in the qualifying relationship and this phrase, 'eclipse name-therof', unlike *olması olayına*, has no case ending and is the subject of the sentence: *The name 'eclipse' verilir is given olayına to the occurrence of olması its becoming görünmez not seen.* The *-sı* of *olması* joins it to the two words in the genitive: *bütününün veya bir kısmının to the event of the becoming unseen of the whole of it or of a part of it.* Of what? Clearly of the phrase in the genitive at the beginning – *Bir gök cisminin of a celestial body.*

You may wonder why it cannot be the even nearer genitive phrase *başka bir cisminin of another body*, but that must be the possessor of the following *girmesi (its entering)*. -yle by its entering *araya to the space between.*

The meaning of the first sentence, therefore, is as follows:

*The name 'eclipse' is given to the event of the part or the whole of a celestial body's becoming invisible because of the intervention of another body.*

**Başka deyimle** 'with other locution' In other words *Buna . . . denir* 'for this . . . is said' This is called . . .

**güneşle dünya arasına:** (see 7.7, last para. but three).  
**çarptığından** 'from their striking' because they strike. If you would have expected the plural (**çarpışmalarından**), refer to the last para. of 2.2.  
**alamayınca** as it cannot receive (see 10.5, 6).

## Unit Eleven

### 1 The verb, causative

*He lay on the bed; we laid him on the bed. The tree fell; you felled the tree. Laid and felled are causative verbs – we caused him to lie, you caused the tree to fall. Most causative verbs in Turkish are formed by adding -dir to the stem. Although this suffix is distinct in origin and function from the suffix meaning is, the various forms they may assume are the same (see 2.2).*

<i>yemek to eat</i>	<i>yedirmek to feed</i>
<i>ölmek to die</i>	<i>öldürmek to kill</i>
<i>kannak to be satisfied</i>	<i>kandırmak to convince, cheat</i>
<i>unutmak to forget</i>	<i>unutturmak to cause to forget</i>

Vowel stems of more than one syllable add -t:

<i>okumak to read</i>	<i>okutmak to educate</i>
<i>anlamak to understand</i>	<i>anlatmak to explain, narrate,</i> <i>tell</i>
<i>beklemek to wait</i>	<i>bekletmek to keep waiting</i>

Stems of more than one syllable ending in r or l often add -t:

<i>oturmak to sit</i>	<i>oturtmak to seat</i>
<i>darılmak to be cross</i>	<i>darıltmak to irritate, offend</i>

A few monosyllabic stems, mostly ending in k, add -it/üt/it/ut:

<i>korkmak to fear</i>	<i>korkutmak to frighten</i>
<i>akmak to flow</i>	<i>akıtmak to let flow</i>

Some twenty monosyllabic stems add -ir/ür/ır/ur:

<i>bitmek to end</i>	<i>bitirmek to bring to an end</i>
<i>geçmek to pass</i>	<i>geçirmek to spend (time)</i>

Other common verbs in this class are: *batmak to sink, dođmak to be born, doymak to be satiated, duymak to feel, hear, dđsmek to fall, iđmek to drink, kađmak to escape, piđmek to cook, uđmak to fly, yatmak to lie down.*

Three verbs add -er/ar:

<i>çkmak to go up, out</i>	<i>çkarmak to extract, expel</i>
<i>gitmek to go</i>	<i>gidirmek to remove</i>
<i>kopmak to break off, out</i> (intrans.)	<i>koparmak to break off, out</i> (trans.)

The following are irregular:

<i>kalkmak to rise, depart</i>	<i>kaldırmak to raise, remove</i>
<i>görmek to see</i>	<i>göstermek to show</i>

The causative of *görmek* in its secondary sense of *to perform* is regular:

Bu vazifeyi göreceđim *I shall perform this duty*

Bu vazifeyi sana gördüreceđim *I shall make you perform this duty*

## 2 Uses of the causative

If the simple verb has a direct object it remains as object of the causative, while the subject of the simple verb goes into the dative, as in the example at the end of the preceding section and in the following:

Müzeyi gezeceđiz *We shall go round the museum*

Kenan bize müzeyi gezdirecek *Kenan will take us round the museum*

Mektubu yazdım *I wrote the letter*

Mektubu ona yazdırdım *I got him to write the letter*

If it is unnecessary to identify the agent, the word in the dative may be omitted:

Mektubu yazdırdım *I got the letter written*

If the simple verb has no direct object (e.g. if it takes a dative, like *başlamak to begin* or *inanmak to believe*), its subject becomes the object of the causative:

Fatma piyanoya başladı *Fatma has started the piano*

Annesi, Fatma'yı piyanoya başlattı *Her mother has started Fatma on the piano*

Ben buna inanıyorum *I believe this*

Buna sizi de inandırmak istiyorum *I want to make you believe this too*

Çocuklar parkta geziyorlar *The children are walking in the park*  
Çocukları parkta gezdiriyorlar *They are taking the children for a walk in the park*

Particularly when negative, the causative may mean *not to cause to but to let*:

Öğrencilerini söylemez *He won't let his pupils speak*

Treni kaçırdım 'I let the train escape' *I missed the train*

A verb may take more than one causative suffix:

Otel memuru rezervasyonu yapar *The hotel official makes the reservation*

Müşteri rezervasyonu yaptırır *The client gets the reservation made* (in English we would say *makes the reservation* for both)

Müşteri, otel memuruna rezervasyonu yaptırır *The client gets the hotel official to make the reservation*

**Yaptırmak** is the causative of **yapıtmak**, which is the causative of **yapmak**.

Yemek pişiyor *The dinner is cooking*

Aşçı yemeđi pişiriyor *The cook is cooking the dinner*

Eşim asçya yemeđi pişirtmeye çalışıyor *My wife is trying to get the cook to cook the dinner*

Fare ölmedi *The mouse did not die*

Kedi, fareyi öldürmedi *The cat did not kill the mouse*

Kediye fareyi öldürtmedim *I did not let the cat kill the mouse*

Reflexive and reciprocal verbs may be made causative:

bulunmak *to find oneself, be*

bulundurmak *to cause to be found, to keep in stock*

Bakanla görüşmek istiyoruz *We want an interview with the minister*

Bizi Bakanla görüştürebilir misiniz? 'Can you make us, with the minister, see one another?' *Can you fix us an interview with the minister?*

Passive verbs are not made causative but causative verbs may be made passive:

Bakanla görüşürülemedik *We were unable to be given an interview with the minister*  
Bekletilmekten hoşlanmaz *She doesn't like to be kept waiting*

Not all verbs in *-tir* are reciprocal plus causative; some are intensive: *sormak to ask, soruşturmak to make enquiries; aramak to seek, araştırmak to investigate, research.*

### 3 Uses of demek

As we saw in 10.2, indirect speech is expressed by the personal participle: *Geldiğinizi söyledi He said that you came.* If the speaker's actual words are quoted, *demek* and not *söylemek* is used for *to say*. The part of *demek* may come before or after the words quoted; if before, it is immediately followed by *ki*, which should not be translated:

Dedi ki hayır *He said 'No'* Hayır dedi *'No,' said he*

If Osman says to you, "*Yarın geleceğim*" '*I shan't be able to come tomorrow*', you may pass the information on in several ways: Osman dedi ki, yarın gelececeğim; Osman, yarın gelececeğim dedi; Osman yarın gelececeğini söyledi; Osman yarın gelececekmış.

As direct speech is normally introduced by part of *demek*, if a verb other than *to say* is used — as in *He shouted, 'No!'* or *'Where?' he asked* — the pattern is '*He shouted saying . . .*' or '*He asked saying . . .*'

The word for *saying* in such contexts is *diye*, an adverbial form of *demek*: *Hayır diye haykırdı; Nerede? diye sordu.* Some modern writers omit the *diye*.

A *No Smoking sign* is *Sigara İçilmez diye bir levha* ("*Cigarette Is-not-smoked*"\* saying a sign).

\*Once you have acquired the feel of the language, you will see that a closer translation is '*Cigarette-smoking is-not-done*'.

*Diye* does not introduce only quotations; it may introduce unspoken thoughts too:

Onu gelecek diye bekliyorum *I am awaiting him in the expectation that he will come ('He will come')*  
Değişiklik olsun diye otobüslü geldik *For a change ('Change let-there-be' saying) we came by bus*

Hence the common *Ne diye . . . ?* ('saying what?') *With what thoughts/motive?*

*Ne diye sizi yolladılar? What was their idea in sending you?*

If a self-assertive citizen is told, on entering a railway compartment, "*Yer yok!*" '*No room!*' and notices a vacant seat, he may say, "*Ne diye yer yokmuş?*" '*Why "no room"?*' (Without the *-muş*, the sense would be *Why is there no room?*).

*Demek* is used with the third person singular of any tense of *olmak* for *to mean* when the subject is a word or a concept:

*Bu deyim ne demek (tir)? What does this expression mean?*  
*İngilizcede "child" çocuk demektir, "children" de çocuklar demek olacak* *In English, 'child' means 'çocuk' and 'children' will mean 'çocuklar'.*

*Bunun ne demek olduğunu anladsın mı? Have you realised what this means?*

With the usual conversational omission of *-dir*, *demek* alone can be *it means*:

*Demek sen gelececeksin/Sen gelececeksin demek* *That means you won't be coming*

When the subject of *to mean* is a person, use *demek istemek*:

*Ne demek istiyorsun? What do you mean?* (exactly the French *Que veux-tu dire?*)

*-demek is to call, to name:*

*Buraya ne diyorlar? What do they call ('say for') this place?*

But it may also have its literal sense of *to say to*:

*Ahmet'e bir diyeceğiniz var mı? Have you any message for Ahmet?* ('a thing-of-your-future-saying to Ahmet?')

Derken 'while saying' is used for 'and just at that moment':

Ben tıraş oluyordum, derken misafirler geldi. *Just as I was shaving, the guests arrived*

#### 4 Translation of *must*

The Turkish method of expressing *You must wait here*, for example, is 'Your waiting here is necessary'. For *necessary*, besides *lazım*, still in common use despite its Arabic origin, there is the Turkish *gerek*, meaning both *necessary* and *necessity*; in the latter meaning it makes an adjective, *gerekli*. There is also a verb *gerekmek* to be *necessary*:

Burada beklemeniz lazım/gerek/gerekli/gerekiyor. Otobüs dur-  
agından beş kilometre yürümemiz gerekecek. *We shall  
have to walk five km from the bus stop*

The suffix *-meli* may be added to verb stems to indicate necessity, though not so pressing a necessity as the previous locution; it corresponds to *should* or *ought* rather than to *must*:

Fakirlere yardım etmeli. *One should help the poor*  
Soğuk su ile tıraş olmamalı. *One ought not to shave with cold  
water*

Bir şeyi yice düşünmeli, ondan sonra söylemeli. *One should think  
well about a thing, [and] then speak*

It may also be used with any person of the present or past of to be:

İstasyona erken varmaya çalışmalıyız. *We ought to try to get to  
the station early*  
Böyle davranmamalıydınız. *You shouldn't have behaved in this  
way*

It will be seen that the third person singular may be personal as well as impersonal:

Günde bir buçuk litre su içmeli. *One should drink a litre and a half  
of water a day*  
Herkes günde bir buçuk litre su içmeli. *Everyone should drink . . .*  
The word *zor* *force, obligation* is regularly used as in:

Mahkeme, kanunları uygulamak zorundadır. *The court is  
obliged to apply the laws ('is in the obligation to . . .')*

It has virtually replaced the Ottoman *meccuriyet*.

#### 5 Translation of *so-and-so*

Falan, filan, falanca all mean *so-and-so, such-and-such*:

Ben falan oğlu falanın diye anlatmaya başladı. *He began to  
explain [saying], 'I am so-and-so, son of so-and-so'*  
Filan tarihinde falancaya gittik. *On such-and-such a date, we went to  
so-and-so*

Falan and filan also mean *and so on, and all that*:

Para falan istemiyorum. *I'm not asking for money or anything like  
that*  
Martta falan gelecektiği. *He's supposed to be coming in March or  
thereabouts*

Toplantıda çocuk falan bulunmasın. *At the meeting let there be  
no children and so on (i.e. babies or other potential sources of  
disturbance)*

Another locution for *and all that*, very common colloquially, is made by repeating the word in question but with *m* substituted for the initial consonant or preceding the first vowel: *çocuk falan* in the previous example can be replaced by *çocuk meçuk*.

Other examples:

Burada kutu yok. *There's no box here*  
Burada kutu muttu yok. *There's no box or chest or case or carton  
or anything of the kind here*  
Arkadaş markadaş, herkes borcunu vermelidir. *Friend, mate,  
chum; no matter who it is, everyone should pay his debt*

This device clearly will not work if the original word itself starts with *m*, when *falan* or *filan* must be used:

Mektup falan geldi mi? *Have any letters or postcards or parcels  
or any other mail come?*

Falanmıcı (5.10) means *the so-many-eth*:

Falanmıcı evin falanmıcı katında oturuyorum diye yazınız *Write [saying], 'I am living on floor number so-and-so of house number so-and-so'*

## 6 The suffix -ip

This is an old past participle ending, regularly used nowadays to save repeating the suffixes of pairs of verbs with the same subject and in the same tense. Instead of *Oturabileceğiz ve konuşabileceğiz* *We shall be able to sit and we shall be able to talk*, we may say *Oturup konuşabileceğiz* *We shall be able to sit and talk*. Instead of *Cesareti topladı ve sordu* *He gathered his courage and asked*, one can say *Cesareti toplayıp sordu*. Instead of *Gitmelişiniz ve görmelişiniz* *You ought to go and see* (which can in fact be simplified to *Gitmelişiniz*), it is enough to say *Gidip görmelişiniz*. In all these examples the original past meaning of the suffix is still discernible, in that the action of the first verb precedes that of the second.

If the second verb is negative and the first is positive, the first (the one ending in *-ip*) is followed by *de*:

*Okuyup anlamaz* *He does not read and understand*  
*but Gidip de gelmedi* *He went but did not come back*

If the two verbs have the same stem, however, the second being in the negative, *de* is not used. This happens in sentences of the pattern of '*I don't know whether he'll come or not*' *Gelip gelmiyeceğini bilmiyorum* '*I don't know his future coming and his future not coming*':

*Davetimizi kabul edip etmiyeceği, işini yarın aksama kadar bitirmiş olup olmadığını bağlaymış* '*His future accepting and not accepting are, it seems (-yims), tied to his being and not being having-finished . . . ? Whether or not he will accept our invitation depends, it seems, on whether or not he has finished his work by tomorrow evening*

## 7 Conditional sentences, open and remote

So far we have met *isem* (*if I am*) etc. and the forms made by suffixing it to the various tense-bases: *gidiyorsam* *if I am going*, *verirsen* *if you*

*give*, and so on. The past conditional, as in *if I saw*, is made by adding the suffixed forms of *isem*, etc. to the past base — *gördüysem* — or the third person *-(y)se/şa* to the past tense — *gördünse*. Such conditionals are said to be open — that is, they do not imply that the fulfilment of the condition is unlikely or impossible:

*Kendisini görürsem söyleyim* *If I see him I'll tell [him]*  
*Siz kalmazsanız biz kalmayız* *If you don't stay, we won't stay*  
*Yemek yiyorsa dışarda bekleyin* *If he's eating, wait outside*  
*Anlamadınsa daha açık konuşmam* *If you have not understood, I cannot speak more openly.*

*Gideceksen git* *If you're going to go, go*

Conditional sentences are sometimes introduced by *eğer*, which does not affect the sense.

There is a second type, the remote conditional, such as '*If I were to see him I would tell him*', where the implication is that the condition is not likely to be fulfilled. In this type, the suffixes *-sem/sam*, *-sen/san*, *-se/şa*, *-sek/sak*, *-seniz/sanız*, *-seler/salar* which, added to the stem *i-*, make the conditional of the verb *to be*, are added directly to the stem of the requisite verb: *gisseim* *if I were to go*, *versen* *if you were to give*, *alsak* *if we were to buy*.

For the remote conditional of *to be*, use the conditional of *olmak*. So *isem* *if I am* but *olsam* *if I were*:

*Ben sizin yerinizde olsam onlarla iyi geçinmeye çalışırdım* *If I were in your place I should try to get on well with them*  
*Efendim, saatinizi çalmış olsam cebimde bırakacak kadar ahmak değilim* *Sir, if I had stolen ('were having-stolen') your watch I am not so stupid as to leave ('stupid the amount of future leaving') it in my pocket*  
*Yarın saat sonra gelsen olmaz mı? If I were to come half an hour later, wouldn't it do?*

*Bunu yapsam mı?* (an irresolute '*If I were to do this?*') comes to mean *Should I do this?*

Pairs of alternative conditions are expressed with the verbs in the remote conditional and a *de/da* in both clauses:

*Yağmur yağsa da yağmasa da yola çıkmalısınız* *Whether or not it rains, we ought to start off*

Biletçi, 'Ayakta da olsan vereceksin. Otursan da vereceksin' dedi  
*The conductor said, 'If you're on foot you'll pay and if you're sitting down you'll pay'*

### 8 Conditional sentences, unfulfilled

There is a third type of conditional sentence, in which there is no possibility of the condition's being fulfilled. In this type, the past tense of *to be* is added to the conditional of the verb:

Elimde olmasaydı buraya gelmezdim. 'If-it-were having-been in my hand . . . ? *Had it been in my hands, I would not have come here*

Herkes bunlar gibi düşünseydi, şimdi hangimiz dünyada olurduk? *If everybody had thought like these people, which of us would be in the world now?*

It is worth memorising the two words *bilirdiysem* if *I knew* and *bilseydim had I known* or *if only I had known*! The first, though in the past, is an open condition:

Cevabı o zaman bilirdiysem şüphesiz ki size söyledim *If I knew the answer at that time I no doubt told you*

The second is unfulfilled:

Cevabı o zaman bilseydim size söyledim *Had I known the answer at that time I would have told you*

A conditional verb followed by *de* means *although*:

Bürosuna üç defa gittimse **de** kendisini göremedim *Although I went to his office three times, I wasn't able to see him*  
 Koşuyorsa **da** geç kalacak *Although she is running she's going to be late*

### Vocabulary 11

aman <i>mercy!</i> for pity's sake!	düşünmek <i>to think</i>
camii <i>mosque</i>	ezan <i>the call to prayer</i>
-e çıkmak <i>to climb up</i>	efendi <i>sir</i>
dayanmak <i>to endure</i>	geri <i>back</i>
doğurmak <i>to give birth</i>	hamam <i>Turkish bath, hammam</i>

-e inanmak <i>to believe</i>	sevap (reward for) a pious act
kazan <i>cooking-pot</i>	sevinmek <i>to be pleased</i>
komsu <i>neighbour</i>	şaşırmak <i>to be surprised</i>
kötü <i>bad, ugly</i>	türkü <i>folk-song</i>
madem <i>since</i>	ufak <i>tiny</i>
minare <i>minaret</i>	yapmak <i>to make, build</i>
ses <i>voice</i>	yıkannamak <i>to wash oneself</i>
seslenmek <i>to call out</i>	

### READING 11 Two more stories of Nasreddin Hoca

A Nasreddin Hoca bir gün komşusuna giderek büyük bir kazan ister, alır ve birkaç gün sonra içine ufak bir kazan koyarak geri verir. Bunu gören komşu, şaşırarak "Bu nedir?" diye sorunca Hoca "Kazanın doğurdu" der. Komşu sevinerek her iki kazanı da alır. Günlerden bir gün yine Hoca komşusuna gidip büyük kazanı ister ve alır. Fakat günler geçer gider bir türlü Hoca aldığı kazanı geri götürüp vermez. Komşu dayanamaz, Hoca'ya gelip kazanı sorar. Hoca "Kazanın öldü" diye cevap verir. Komşu "Aman Hocam hiç kazan ölür mü?" deyince Hoca "Kazanın doğurduğuna inanıyorsun da ölüğüne neden inanmıyorsun?" der.

#### Notes

*istemek* is not only *to want* but also *to ask for*.

*içine* *to its* (the cooking pot's) *inside*.

*koyarak* *putting; putting inside it*.

Bunu . . . *şaşıarak* 'The neighbour who sees this, being surprised'.

Bu . . . *sorunca* 'on asking, saying "What is this?"' *When the neighbour who sees this asks in surprise, 'What's this?'*

*doğmak* *to be born, doğurmak* (causative) *to give birth*.

*Günlerden bir gün* 'one day of the days' is a story-book expression, not a normal conversational phrase.

*der* is the aorist of *demek* *to say*.

B Hoca bir gün hamamda yıkanırken türkü söyler. Hamamda Hoca'ya kendi sesi pek güzel gelir. Madem sesim güzel, ezan okur, sevap alırım diye düşünür. Hamamdan doğru camiye gider, minareye çıkıp ezan okumaya başlar. Aşağıdan geçen birisi Hoca'ya seslenerek "Böyle vakitsiz bu kötü sesle ezan mı okunur?" deyince, Hoca "Minareye bir hamam yapılsaydı sen sesimin güzelliğini o zaman anlardın" der.

## Notes

Note that *söylemek* is to sing as well as to tell, and that *okumak* is to recite as well as to read.

*Aşağıdan geçen birisi* someone passing below (remember that to pass through is -den geçmek, so the literal meaning is 'someone passing through-the-underneath').  
*vaktisiz*; see 3.9, end.

## Unit Twelve

1 *Whoever, whatever*

Sentences introduced by such words are treated as conditional. For the connection between the two notions, consider the English: *If anyone calls/Whoever calls, say I've gone out.*

*Her (every)* often precedes:

*Her ne isterse yapısın* Let him do whatever he wants

*Nasıl istersen giyin* Dress however you wish

*Kim çalırsın kazanır* Whoever works, wins

*Siz ne kadar eziliyorsanız biz de o kadar eziliyoruz* We're being squashed just as much as you are

2 *More about conditionals*

There are two ways of expressing conditions without using a conditional verb, as seen in these two examples:

*Ahmet yapmadı da kim yaptı?* 'Ahmet did not and who did?' *If*

*Ahmet didn't do it, who did?*

*Orada bulmadılar mı buraya gelirtler* 'Have they not found there?' [In that case] they come here' *If they don't find it there they'll come here*

We sometimes use an 'if' sentence to express a command or request: *If you'll be good enough to wait a moment.* Turkish makes a similar use of the conditional, usually with a suffixed -e, this being simply an interjection like our 'Oh' in 'Oh do shut up and listen!': *Oursanız! Do sit down!*; *Dinleseniz! Do listen!*; *Baksanız! Do look!* Depending on the speaker's tone, this may be impatient or courteous.



Many common expressions contain a conditional verb, for example **Allahım seversen** (pronounced **Allâssen**) 'If you love your God' *For Heaven's sake!* Particularly frequent is the use of **ise** if it is to draw attention to a preceding word:

Hikmet **ise**/Hikmet'se pek tembeldir *As for Hikmet, he's very lazy* ('If it is Hikmet [that you're asking about] . . .')  
 Bense pek çalışkanım *As for me, I'm very hardworking*

Note the following:

Ne olursa olsun <i>Be it as it may</i>	Hıç olmazsa <i>At least</i>
Ne ise <i>Well, anyway</i>	Olsa gerek <i>It (logically) must be</i>
Neredeyse (nerede ise) <i>Soon</i>	Bilse bilse o bilir <i>If anyone knows, he does</i>
Öyleyse (öyle ise) <i>In that case</i>	

### 3 The subjunctive

This is a form of the verb used to express not actual happenings but concepts whose realisation is envisaged, feared, or desired. The base is -e/a after consonants, -ye/ya after vowels. The personal endings differ somewhat from those we have previously met:

olayım <i>may I be, let me be,</i> <i>that I may be</i>	olalım <i>may we be, etc.</i>
olasın <i>may you be, etc.</i>	olasınız <i>may you be, etc.</i>
ola <i>may he/she/it be, etc.</i>	olalar <i>may they be, etc.</i>
söyleyeyim <i>may I tell, let me tell, that I may tell</i>	söyleyelim <i>may we tell, etc.</i>
söyleyesin <i>may you tell, etc.</i>	söyleyesiniz <i>may you tell, etc.</i>
söyleye <i>may he/she/it tell, etc.</i>	söyleyeler <i>may they tell, etc.</i>

Only the *I* and *we* forms are in common use. The *I* form serves as a future; if you have been deliberating a purchase you may end up by saying **Alayım** *Let me take [it], i.e. I'll take it.*

The *we* form is used as in **Gidelim!** *Let's go!*; **Bakalım!** *Let's see!* **Biletiniz kalınyalım!** is the regular cry of conductors on city buses: 'Let us not remain ticketless!'

The *you* forms are rarely heard and the third persons are confined to a few stereotyped pious phrases (see the last two examples in this section). The place of the third person of the subjunctive in ordinary speech is usually taken by the imperative – **olsun** rather than **ola** for *may he be*, **versin** rather than **vere** for *may he give*.

In speech, the -**ye** is often dropped from the subjunctive of vowel stems, **söyleyeyim** *let me say* being pronounced as **söyleyim**; **başlayayım** *let me begin* as **başlayım**. **Yapım** is often heard for **yapayım** *let me do* and **Napalım?** for **Ne yapalım?** *What are we to do?*

The subjunctive past is formed, like the conditional past, by adding **idin**, etc. to the base:

olaydım, olaydın, olaydı, olaydık, olaydınız, olaydılar

It is little used except for hopeless wishes, when it may be introduced by **keşke**:

**Keşke bileydik!** *Would that we had known!* or *If only we'd known!*

The conditional past is commoner in this sense: **Keşke bilseydik!** Examples:

**Pencereyi açayım mı?** *May I open the window?*

**Lütfen bir dakika bekleyniz** bir gazete alayım *Please wait a minute [so] that I may buy a paper*

**İster misiniz** size de okuyayım? *Do you want me to read to you?*  
**Biraz dinleneyim** diye oturdum *I sat down to rest a little*

**Karsındaki ne sanıyorsun?** – **Ne sanırsam sanayım!** 'What do you think the one-facing-you?' – 'Whatever I think let me think' *Who do you think you're talking to?* – *Never you mind what I think!*

**Allah vere** de yağmur yağmasa 'May God grant and if it were not to rain' *I hope to goodness it doesn't rain*

**Hayrola** *Nothing wrong. I hope?* (for **Hayır ola** 'May there be good')

### 4 The conjunction ki

We have met this equivalent for *that* in the first paragraph of 11.3. It is written as a separate word and in speech is never accented, thus being easily distinguished from the suffix **-ki** (5.2). Its use as in the first two



examples is not native to the language and careful speakers prefer the constructions after the equals signs:

Bir adam ki öğüt dinlemez = Öğüt dinlemeyen bir adam *A man who does not listen to advice*

Herkes bilir ki dünya yuvarlaktır = Dünyanın yuvarlak olduğunu herkes bilir *Everyone knows that the world is round*

Öyle senli benli görüşüyorlardı ki görenler kırk yıllık abhap sanırdı *They were conversing so informally that those who saw thought [them] forty-year friends*

Often in sentences beginning with *öyle* or *o kadar* so, so much, the explanatory words after *ki* are left to the imagination: *O kadar eğlendik ki! We had so much fun that [I can't begin to tell you]!* The English idiom is to omit the 'that' as well.

Here are some more examples:

Dün otobüsteydim. Hangi gün değilim ki *Yesterday I was on the bus. As when am I not? 'Which day am I not that [I should single out yesterday]?*

Bir kadın sesi: Ne çekiyorsun kolumu, herif? Sustum. Bana ne? Ben kimsenin kolumu çekmedim ki *A female voice: What are you pulling my arm [for], you scoundrel? I was silent. What was it to me? I didn't pull anyone's arm that [I should suppose she meant me]*

An intermediate stage may be seen in: *Öyle bir sıcak oldu ki sormayın I can't tell you how hot it was* ('Such a heat happened that don't ask').

The student who likes to learn something by heart may enjoy this Turkish version of a piece of traditional Chinese wisdom. It exemplifies the use of *ki* and of the personal participle:

Bir adam ki bilir, bildiğini de bilir,  
O adam akıllıdır, onu takip et.  
Bir adam ki bilmez fakat bilmediğini bilir,  
O adam zavallıdır, ona yardım et.  
Bir adam ki bilmez, bilmediğini de bilmez,  
O adam zararlıdır, ondan uzak dur.

*A man that knows, and knows that he knows, / That man is intelligent; follow him. / A man who does not know but knows that he does not*

*know, / That man is unfortunate; help him. / A man who does not know and does not know that he does not know, / That man is dangerous; stand far from him.*

## 5 Points of the compass

kuzey	north	kuzeydoğu	north-east
güney	south	güneydoğu	south-east
doğu	east	güneybatı	south-west
batı	west	kuzeybatı	north-west

The names in the left-hand column are the *anayönler* ('mother-directions') *cardinal points*. The others are called *arayönler* ('interval-directions'), for which there seems to be no current English equivalent.

These terms are used both as adjectives and nouns. *Western Anatolia* is *Batı Anadolu* but *Western countries* is *Batı memleketleri* and *Westerners* is *Batılılar*. *The north of the country* is *memleketin kuzeyi*.

*Yozgat*, Tokat'ın güneybatısındadır *Yozgat is south-west of Tokat*

## 6 Formation of verbs

The following are the principal suffixes used to make verbs from other parts of speech, like the English *-ise/-ize* and *-ify*:

-lemek			
gevre	<i>environs</i>	gevrelenmek	<i>to surround, encircle</i>
göz	<i>eye</i>	gözlenmek	<i>observe, watch out for</i>
hazır	<i>ready</i>	hazırlamak	<i>to prepare</i>
iş	<i>work</i>	işlemek	<i>to operate, function</i>
su	<i>water</i>	sulamak	<i>to water, irrigate</i>
yine	<i>again</i>	yinelenmek	<i>to repeat</i>

Ambiguities are possible: *sular* may be *waters* (the plural of *su*) or *he irrigates*, the aorist of *sulamak*; *işler* may be *works* or *it functions*; *gözlerin* may be *my eyes* or *I observe*.

**-lenmek** (for the *n* see 9.3)

hazırlanmak	to prepare oneself, to get ready
sulanmak	to be watered, become watery
ev	house
can	life, soul
evlenmek	to get married
canlanmak	to come to life

**-leşmek** (for the *ş* see 10.7, though the reciprocal sense is not always discernible, many examples having the sense of *to become*):

batıl	Western	batılaşmak	to become Westernised
dar	narrow	darlaşmak	to grow narrow
dert	pain, sorrow	derleşmek	to commiserate
mektup	letter	mektuplaşmak	to correspond
bir	one	birleşmek	to unite
ölmez	undying	ölmezleşmek	to become immortal

**-(e)lmek**

az	few, small	azalmak	to diminish
çok	many, much	çokalmak	to increase
doğru	straight	doğrulamak	to become straight, head for
kısa	short	kısalınmak	to become short
yüce	exalted	yücelmek	to become exalted

Two-syllabled words ending in *k* lose it before this suffix:

küçük	small	küçülmek	to become small
yüksek	high	yükselmek	to rise

**-ermek**

With words of more than one syllable, only the first is used before this suffix, which is added mostly to names of colours:

ak	white	agarmak	to turn white
sarı	yellow	sararmak	to turn yellow
yeşil	green	yeşermek	to turn green
kızıl	red	kızarmak	to turn red, be roasted/fried

**-semek, -nsemek, -insemek**

su	water	susamak	to thirst
benim	of me	benimsemek	to appropriate, to adopt

*çok* much *çokumsamak* to regard as excessive

*az* little *azımsamak* to consider insufficient

*küçük* small *küçümsemek* to disparage

*iyi* good *iyimsemek* to be optimistic

*kötü* bad *kötümsemek* to be pessimistic

Causatives are formed regularly: *sulanmak* to cause to irrigate; *canlandırılmak* to revive, vivify; *ölmezleştirmek* to immortalise; *küçültmek* to belittle; *kızartmak* to roast, fry.

## 7 More adverbial forms of the verb

Like **-erek** and **-ince** (10.6), the following suffixes are attached to verb stems, with *y* as a buffer between vowels:

**-e-e**

A pair of verb stems, each with a suffixed **-e/-a**, denotes repeated action accompanying that of the main verb and by the same subject. The accent is on the first **-e** of the pair:

*Bile bile yalan söyler* He tells lies deliberately ('knowingly')

*Koşa koşa geldi* He came running

*Sora sora aradığı yeri buldu* With constant asking he found the place he sought

The usual term of farewell, **Güle güle**, means '[Go] smilingly'.

**-e-e** is often interchangeable with **-erek**, as in *istemiyerek* or *istemiyeye* *istemiyeye gitti* he left unwillingly, but differs from it in that **-erek** does not connote repeated action.

Instead of repeating the same stem, two different stems of related meaning may be used: *Öksüre aksıra odama girdi* Coughing and sneezing he entered my room.

**-inceye kadar/dek** or **-ene kadar/dek** until

*Postacı gelinceye kadar bekledik* We waited until the postman came

*Hava açılncaya dek yola çıkmıyalım* Let's not go out until the weather clears up

Çocuklar okudan eve gelene kadar hep pencereden bakar *Until the children come home from school she keeps looking out of the window*

-meden *without, before*

The accent is on the syllable before this suffix:

Bana sormadan tornavidamı almış *He has taken my screwdriver without asking me*

Siz olmadan yapamayız *We cannot do without you ('you not-being')*

Görmeden inanılmıyacak *It has to be seen to be believed ('without-seeing, believing-will-not-be-done')*

The sense of *before* may be emphasised by adding *önce* or *evvel*: *ben gelmeden üç gün önce Konya'ya gitmişti* *He had gone to Konya three days before I came.*

-dikten sonra *after*

Mektubu okuduktan sonra geri verdim *After reading the letter I gave [it] back*

-eli, -eli beri, -elden beri *since*

Buraya geldi hiç mektup yazmadım *Since coming here I have written no letters at all*

The subject of the *since* clause may be shown by inserting a noun or pronoun: *Biz/Oğlum buraya gelemeden beri ben hiç mektup yazmadım* *Since we/my son came here I have written no letters at all.* Or it may be clear from the context: *Doğu uygarlığından umudumuzu keseli çok oldu* *It has been a long time since we gave up hope of Eastern civilisation ('since-cutting our hope').*

Alternatively, the subject may be shown by using the past tense before the *-eli* form of the same verb:

Buraya geldim geleli *Since I came here*

Buraya geldiniz geleli *Since you came here*

Su kapıdan çıktı çıkalı *Since she went out of that door*

The negative verb with *-eli* is best translated as positive:

Oğlunuz masallah biz görmiyeli çok büyümüş *Your son has grown a lot since we last saw him ('since we have not seen')*

For *masallah*, see 15.2.

-dikçe *the more . . .*

İnsan yaşadıkça bilgisi artar *The more one lives, the more one's knowledge increases*

Kız güldükçe yüzünde güller açılır. *agladıkça gözlerinden inciler sağılır* *It is said that (-miş) every time the girl laughs, roses bloom on her face; every time she weeps, pearls are scattered from her eyes*

Fil gibi, yedikçe yer *Like the elephant, the more he eats the more he eats*

Her *every* is sometimes added: *Bursa'yı her gördükçe daha çok seviyorum* *The more I see Bursa, the more I love it.*

Gittikçe 'the more it goes' means *gradually*; *oldukça* 'the more it happens' means *rather, quite, quite a lot.*

-meksizin *without*

Bir dakika bile kaybetmeksizin geldiler *They came without losing even a minute*

-mekense *rather than*

Televizyon seyretmekense, bahçede oturup bira içelim *Rather than watch TV, let's sit in the garden and drink beer*

## Vocabulary 12

ayrılmak *to separate*

bakım *aspect, point of view*

baraj *dam*

bol *plentiful*

bölge *region, zone*

çıplak *bare, naked*

feribot *car ferry*

geniş *wide*

göl *lake*

ilçe (chief town of a) *sub-*

province

iskele *landing-stage*

kabarmak *to swell*

kale *fort*

karayolu *highway ('land-road')*

kemer *arch, arched*

meydana getirmek *to bring into being*

mümkün *possible*

nokta *point*

restore etmek *to restore*

rihtim *quay*

seğmek *to discern, make out*

tepe *peak, hill*

ulaşım *access, communications,*

transport

vakıf (-kft) *pious endowment*

yaklaşık, takriben *approximately*

READING 12 *Side effects of dam-building* This is part of an article on Sağman Village, from a journal called *Our World of Art*. The Keban Dam is on the confluence of the Murad river (note this meaning of *su*) and the Euphrates (Fırat). The lake created by the dam submerged a large number of villages. The mosques of Çelebi Ali Bey and Baysungur, thought to be worth saving, were moved to higher ground.

Murad suyu, Keban Barajı yapıldıktan sonra takriben 150 m. kabarak batıdan doğuya doğru darlaşan ve genişleyen, içinde adalar ve yarımadalar bulunan yaklaşık 100 km. uzunluğunda bir baraj gölü meydana getirmiş, Elazığ ile Tunceli'yi ulaşım bakımından ayırmıştır. Bu bölgedeki ulaşım çeşitli noktalar arasında işleyen feribotlarla yapılabilmektedir. Eski Elazığ-Pertek karayolunun baraj gölünün Elazığ tarafındaki rıhtımından karşıya feribotlarla 15-20 dakikada geçilebilmektedir. Eskiden bu rıhtıma yakın bir yerdeki güzel kemer köprü ise, bugün 100 m. kadar suyun altında kalmıştır. Yine yüksek bir tepenin üzerinde bulunan Pertek kalesi 150 m. kadar yükselen baraj gölü yüzünden ada haline gelmiş, Baysungur ve Çelebi Ali Bey camileri ise Vakıflar Genel Müdürlüğü tarafından daha yüksek olan Pertek ilçesine taşınmış ve restore edilmişlerdir. Elazığ tarafındaki iskeleden kuzeye doğru bakıldığı zaman suyu bol olan yeşil Pertek ilçesi ve onu çevreleyen yüksek, çıplak dağların tepesinde Sağman köyünü seçmek mümkündür.

(Kâzım Çeçen, "Sağman Köyü", *Sanat Dünyamız*, No. 28, 1983)

#### Notes

When dealing with a lengthy sentence, do not be in a hurry to translate an adverbial clause at or near the beginning, because the odds are that it modifies not the main verb, which usually comes at the end, but some nearer verb or participle. This applies here. In the first sentence, the four words meaning *After the Keban Dam was built*, which follow the subject *Murad suyu*, modify *kabarak* 'by swelling'. The participles *darlaşan* and *genişleyen* qualify *bir baraj gölü*, as do *içinde* . . . *bulunan* 'in it islands and peninsulas being' (i.e. *containing islands and peninsulas* — see end of 7.5) and *yaklaşık* . . . *uzunluğunda*.

There are in fact two main verbs, *getirmiş* and *ayırmıştır*, the -*tır* of the latter applying to both. In the third sentence, *rıhtımından* belongs to *karayolunun* and is qualified by the four intervening words.

*geçilebilmektedir* 'it is in the act of being possible for crossing to be done' *one may cross*.

*ada haline gelmiş* 'has come to island-state' *has turned into an island*.

In the last sentence, the participle in *bakıldığı zaman* is another impersonal passive: *when one looks*.

*Pertek ilçesi* and *Sağman köyünü* in the final sentence are both objects of *seçmek*; the former does not have the definite object ending because if it did it would seem parallel to *onu* as object of *çevreleyen*.

## Unit Thirteen

### 1 Adverbs of time

**artık** at last, henceforth:

Artık yaz geldi *Summer has come at last*

Artık oraya gitmem *I don't go there any more.*

**daha** still, yet:

Daha yatıyor mu? *Is he still lying in bed?*

Misafirler daha buradalar mı? *Are the guests still here?*

Daha gitmedi mi? *Hasn't she gone yet?*

In the three preceding examples, **hâlâ** yet may replace **daha**.

Further examples:

Bir saat daha/Daha bir saat beklemedi *It's necessary to wait one*

*hour more*

Daha dün beraber oturup konuşuyorduk *Only yesterday we*

*were sitting and talking together*

Daha şimdi bahçede idi *Just now he was in the garden*

Bir daha oraya gitmesinler *Let them not go there again*

**gene, yine** again, still:

Bakın, gene yağmur başladı *Look, the rain has started again*

Eseğe altın semer vursalar yine eşektir *If they put a golden saddle*

*on a donkey, he's still a donkey*

**hemen** at once, just:

O girince hemen ayağa kalktılar *As he entered, they at once rose*

*to their feet*

Ben hemen o sıralarda gelmiştim *I had arrived at just that time*

A repeated **hemen** is a little less precise: İşler hemen hemen bitmek

üzere *The work is just about on the point of finishing.*

**henüz** just now, just (in negative sentences not yet):

Henüz uykudan kalkmışım *I had just risen from sleep*

Dün gelmişler, ben kendilerini henüz görmedim *They came*

*yesterday: I've not seen them yet*

**arasına** at intervals, now and then; **bazen**, kimi vakit sometimes  
bir an önce/evvel as soon as possible; **bundan böyle** henceforth  
**daima**, her zaman, her vakit always; **demim** just a moment ago  
**derhal** immediately; **erken** early, geç late, ergeç sooner or later  
**ertesi gün** the following day, **ertesi yıl** the following year, **ertesi ve**  
**daha ertesi günler** the two following days

**evvelsi gün** the day before yesterday

**genellikle**, **umumiyyete** generally

**gündüz** (in the) daytime, **gece gündüz** by night and by day

**ilkin**, **ilk önce**, **evvela** first of all

**nerdeyse** soon, before long

**sık sık** frequently

**vaktiyle** formerly/at the right time, **zaman zaman** from time to

*time*

**akşamleyin** at evening, **sabahleyin** in the morning, **geceleyin** at

*night*, **öğleyin** at noon, **kışın** in winter, **yazın** in summer,

**ilkbaharda** in spring, **sonbaharda** in the autumn

The **-in** of **demim**, **ilkin**, **kışın** and **yazın** is not the suffix of the  
genitive; the accent in each of these words falls on the first syllable.

**Ago** is translated by **önce** or **evvel**:

üç hafta önce/evvel *three weeks ago*

üç hafta öncesine/evveline kadar *until three weeks ago*

### 2 Bir

Nouns qualified by **bir** are not necessarily indefinite:

Gözlerimle oturacak bir yer ararken arkadaşım bana boş kalan  
bir koltuğu gösterdi *While I was looking round for ("while*  
*seeking with my eyes") a place to sit, my friend showed me a*  
*chair which remained vacant.*

Not **bir** koltuk *an indefinite chair*, but **bir koltuğu** *one particular*  
*chair.*

The fact that **bir** may often be translated by *some, any* (e.g. *Bir şey istiyor musunuz? Do you want anything?*) helps explain its use with plural nouns, the effect being vaguer than with a noun in the singular:

*Bir şey mırıldandı* *He muttered something; Bir şeyler mırıldandı*

*He muttered something or other*

*Gözlerini kısıp ilerde bir yerlere baktı* *He half-closed his eyes and*

*gazed somewhere ahead; ... ilerde bir yere baktı ... he*

*gazed at a specific place ahead*

As an adverb, **bir** means *only, once*:

*Bir Allah bilir, bir de ben* *Only God and I know*

*Bir gördüğümü bir daha unutmam* *What I have once seen I do*

*not forget again*

*Her haftada bir gelir* *He comes once a week*

*Her şey bitti, bir bu kaldı* *Everything is finished, only this is left*

**Söyle bir** means *just a bit*:

*Söyle bir gezip geldik* *We've just been for a bit of a stroll* ('We have just strolled and come')

*Önce şöyle bir düşündü, sonra oturup elini telefona uzattı* *First he just thought a bit, then he sat down and reached for the telephone*

Among the many other expressions involving **bir** are: **Bir varmış bir yokmuş** *Once upon a time; birden all at one go; birdenbire suddenly; ikide bir frequently.*

### 3 The possessive suffix of the third person

The reader will by now have an idea of the enormous part played in Turkish by the suffix **-(s)ı**. To summarise: it may relate the word to which it is attached (a) to a preceding word in the genitive: **Bu kitabın bir nüshası** *One copy of this book*; (b) to a preceding word in the absolute case: **Sovyet hükümeti** *The Soviet government*; (c) to a word understood from the context but not expressed: **Müdür, odasındadır** *The Director is in his room*; only from a knowledge of the context can we say if he is in his own or someone else's room. Further examples:

*Bu söz yerindedir* *This remark is appropriate* ('in its place')

*Su kumaş çok pahalı. Daha ucuzu yok mu? That material is too dear. Isn't there any cheaper* ('the cheaper of it')?

The antecedent may be quite vague; it may be the whole circumstances of an action:

*İyisi, hep beraber kalkıp oraya gidelim* *The best thing to do* ('the good of it') *is, let's all get up and go there together*

*Hâşh, ne yaptınsa fayda etmedi* *In short* ('the outcome of it'), *whatever I did achieved nothing*

*Fenası şudur ki ... The worst part about it* ('the bad of it') *is this, that ...*

*Doğrusu ...* ('The true of it') *To tell you the truth ... Daha doğrusu ... To put it more precisely ...*

*Daha acısı ...* ('the more painful of it') *Still more painful is the fact that ...*

*Eskisi gibi* ('like the old of it') *As of old*

*it too*

*Orası öyle* ('That place of it is thus') *That's so*

*İnadına* ('for the obstinacy of it') *Out of sheer cussedness*

*Türkçesi* ('the Turkish of it') *To put it bluntly*

In the spoken language, the suffix is often added to **-ki** for no obvious reason; compare **birisi** and other pronouns in the first paragraph of 8.3.

### 4 More adverbs, conjunctions and particles

**adeta** *virtually*      **ancak, yalnız** *only*

**afein** *well done!*      **bari, hiç olmazsa** *at least, at any rate*

**amma, ama, fakat**      **... bile, hatta ...** *even*

**but**

**Beni bile aldattı** *He deceived even me*

**Daha kalkmadı bile** *He hasn't even got up yet*

**Hatta**, though of Arabic origin and therefore disapproved of by modernisers, is still common in colloquial speech. It frequently



reinforces a following bile:

Hatta gözümle görsem inanmam = Gözümle görsem bile inanmam = Hatta gözümle görsem bile inanmam *Even if I were to see it with my [own] eye I shan't believe it*

**dahi also** **essasen, zaten as a matter of fact**  
**elbette certainly**

Zahmet oldu demeyin, ben essasen/zaten gelecektim *Don't say it has been a bother [for me]; I was coming anyway*

**gerçekten, hakikaten, sahiden** **gerek . . . gerek(se)**  
**really, truly** **whether . . . or . . .**

Ha? asks indignant questions:

Bizi görmeden gitti ha? *He's gone without seeing us, has he?*

**halbuki, oysa, oysaki whereas**

Hani or haniya introduce questions about something expected which has not materialised or whose absence is regretted:

Haniya gamasırım? *Where's my laundry then?*

Hani otobüslle gidiyordun? *I thought you were going by bus?*

**haydi(n) Come on!** **hele at least, just**

Hele bak, neler söylüyor! *Just look, the things he's saying!*

**hem and indeed, in fact**

Gidiyor, hem kosarak gidiyor *He's going, in fact he's going at the double*

Hem de nasıl! *And how!*

hem . . . hem . . . both . . . and . . .

**ımdat Help!**

**madem, mademki since, inasmuch as**

**meger (with a following -miş) apparently:**

Meger ben aldannışım *It appears I've been deceived*

**megerki (with a subjunctive) unless:**

Bu iş bitmiyecek, megerki siz de yardım edesiniz *This job will not end, unless you help too*

**mutlaka positively**

**örneğin, mesela for example**

**özellikle, bilhassa in particular, especially**

**pekâlâ very well, all right**

Pekâlâ, madem biliyordun, ne diye söylemedin? *Very well, since you knew, what was the idea of not saying?*

**peki (for pek iyi) very good, very well**

**sahî? sahî mi? really?**

**sakin mind, take care**

**sanki suppose that, as if**

Sanki sahiden öyle söylemişim, ne çıkar? *Suppose I really did say so; what of it? ('what comes out?')*

Sanki ne olmuş? *What's supposed to have happened?*

Sanki şehirden başka bir otel yokmuş gibi! *Anyone would think there was no other hotel in town!*

**tabii naturally, of course**

**ya A ya B = ya A ya da B = ya A veya B = ya A yahut B either A or B**

ya has a number of other uses, the commonest of which are shown in these examples:

Siz konferansa gidiyorsunuz, ya ben ne yapayım? *You're going to the lecture, and what about me, what am I to do?*

O da gelmeli imiş – Gelmeli ya! *They're saying he ought to come too – Yes indeed, so he ought!*

Hani meyva alacaktınız? – Aldım ya! *I thought you were going to buy some fruit? – Well I did, didn't I?*

yani that means, I mean to

yoksa if not, otherwise

say

yazık what a pity!

Yazıklar olsun! *Shame!*

## 5 The suffix -daş/taş

This suffix, the vowel of which is invariable (except in the neologism *işleşlik* 'partnership in a task'), denotes '-fellow': arkadaş 'back-fellow', friend; çağdaş 'time-fellow' contemporary; vatanadaş 'motherland-fel-

low' *fellow-citizen*; *dındağ* 'religion-fellow' *co-religionist*; *meslektaş* 'profession-fellow' *colleague*.

The standard Turkish *kardeş* *brother* is *kardas* in dialect (this for an earlier *karındağ* *womb-fellow*). *Namesake* is *adas*, though one might have expected a double *d* (*ad name*).

## 6 The suffix -esi

-esi attached to verb stems is an old form of future tense. Its chief use nowadays is in cursing:

*İpe gelesi* *May he come to the rope!*

*Kör olası!* *May he become blind!*

*Adi batası!* *May his name sink!*

Such expressions also serve as adjectives (e.g. *kör olası* *herif* *the damned scoundrel*) and as nouns. *Adi batası*, in particular, is applied to diseases:

*Cocuk*, *bu adı batasıya tutulmuş* *The child has caught this damnable thing*

## 7 Diminutives

The following suffixes, all of which are subject to vowel harmony except where otherwise indicated, have the sense of 'little, dear little', occasionally 'poor little':

-cik throws the accent onto the first syllable:

*evcik* *little house*; *anneciğim* *mummy*; *babaciğim* *daddy*

Adjectives ending in *k* must and nouns ending in *k* may drop the *k* before this suffix: *ufak* *tiny*, *ufacık* *tiny little*; *yunusak* *soft*, *yunusacık* *bir yatak* *a lovely soft bed*; *bebek* *baby*, *bebecik/bebekçik* *dear little baby*; *eşek* *donkey*, *eşecik/eşekçik* *little donkey*

With adverbs:

*şimdi* *now*, *şimdiciik* (colloqu. *şimecik*) *right now*; *bu kadar* *just this much*, *this small amount*

Slightly irregular are: from *az* *little* — *azıcık* *a tiny bit*; from *dar* *narrow* — *daracık* *rather narrow*; from *bir* *one* — *biricik* *sole, unique*.

-ce, like our *quite*, may increase as well as diminish the force of the adjective or adverb to which it is attached:

*iyi* *good*, *iyice* *quite good*, *pretty well*; *seyrek* *wide apart*, *seyreğe* *rather infrequently*

It may be combined with -cik, as in *yakıncacık* *very near*, *pretty close*.

-ceğiz. Note especially *adamcağız* *the poor chap*, *the poor wee man* (usually pityingly).

-(i)msi, -(i)mtak. Often used with adjectives of colour, these equal our '-ish': The *a* of -mtak is invariable:

*sarı* *yellow*, *sarımsı*, *sarımtak* *yellowish*; *beyaz* *white*, *beyazmsı*, *beyazmtak* *whitish*; *ekşi* *sour*, *ekşimsi*, *ekşimtrak* *sourish*; *budala* *fool*, *budalamı* *foolish*; *argo* *slang*, *argomşu* *slangy*.

-si is added to nouns and adjectives ending in a consonant: *çocuksu* *childish*, *erkeksi* *mannish*, *ylımsı* *snaky*, *yeşlisi* *greenish*.

## 8 The suffix -(y)ici

Attached to verb stems, this suffix denotes regular occupation and habitual activity; the relationship to -ci is obvious. *Okumak* *to read*, *okuyucu* *reader*; *dinlemek* *to listen*, *dinleyici* *listener*; *akmak* *to flow*, *akıcı* *fluent*; *satmak* *to sell*, *sokak satıcısı* *street trader*; *hastabakıcı* 'patient-looker' *nurse*; *gülmek* *to laugh*, *güldürmek* *to make laugh*, *güldürücü* *amusing*; *dinmek* *to subsidize*, *dindirmek* *to make subsidize*, *acı dindirici* *pain-killer*; *böcek öldürücü* 'insect-killer' *insecticide*

## Vocabulary 13

*aç* *hungry*

*ayrıca* *besides, moreover*

*-e başvurmak* *to apply to, have*

*recourse to*

*-e benzenek* *to resemble*

*-e binmek* *to board, mount*

*çarpıcı* *striking*

*çekmek* *to suffer*

*çiğ* *raw, gaudy, crude*

*dökmek* *to pour*

*endişelenmek* *to worry, be*

*anxious*

*ikram etmek* *to offer, to present*

*indirmek* *to cause to descend,*

*put down*

*kasaba* *town*

*kolonya* *Eau de Cologne*

*konforlu*, *rahat* *comfortable*

*meşgul olmak* *to occupy oneself, to be busy*



muavin, yardımcı assistant	şüpheli, kuşku doubtful
otogar bus station	takip etmek to follow
önlemek to prevent	tavsiye etmek, sahlk vermek to recommend
özellikle especially	türlü various
saglamak to ensure	vagon railway coach
serinlemek to become cool, cool off	yabancı foreigner
sıra ranged in rows	yazılı written
şirket company, firm	yiyecek food
şişe bottle	yorgun weary

### READING 13 Thought of going by bus?

Türkiye'nin her kentinde, kasabasında bir otogar bulunur. Otogar, şehirlerarası otobüslerin yolcularını aldıkları ve indirdikleri yer demektir. Ankara'nın otogarı özellikle çarpıcıdır. Bu büyük, tek katlı binanın içi biraz Kapalı Çarşı'nın sokaklarına benzer. Her iki yanında dükkânlar değil, otobüs şirketlerinin girişleri sıralıdır. Her girişin üstünde hem şirketin adı hem de otobüslerin gittiği yerlerin adları yazılıdır, türlü çiğ renklerde. Otobüsler genellikle büyük ve konforludur, flatları da uzundur. Bir, bir buçuk saatlik yolculuktan sonra bir çayhanede ya da bir lokantada durulur. Şoförün muavinini, arasıra büyük bir şişe kolonya ile otobüsü dolası, yolcular serinlesinler ve yorgunluklarını gidersinler diye ellerine kolonya döker. Otobüsle yolculuk yapan yabancı turistün endişelenmesine hiç gerek yoktur. Öbür yolcular kendisiyle meşgul olacak ve hatta yol boyunca görülecek yerleri göstereceklerdir. Ayrıca yiyecek ikram ederek kendisini aç bırakmayacaklardır. En önemlisi de, şoförün kendisini gideceği yerden öteye götürmesini önleyeceklerdir. Yataklı vagona yolculuk şüphesiz çok rahattır. Ama bana sorarsanız, memleketi daha yakından görmek isteyenlerin, özellikle parası bol olmayanların, otogara başvurmalarını tavsiye ederim.

#### Notes

icli the interior of it.

durulur (impersonal passive) a stop is made.

serinlesinler... diye 'saying "Let them become cool and cause their weariness to go".

göstereceklerdir The final -dir of this verb and of the verbs at the ends of the

two following sentences has an emphasising effect, 'it is a fact that they will...'  
şoförün... önleyeceklerdir 'they will certainly prevent the driver's taking him to beyond the place of his future-going.'  
bana sorarsanız... tavsiye ederim 'if you ask me, of those who want...'  
particularly of those whose money is not abundant (7.5. end), I recommend their having recourse to...'

## Unit Fourteen

### 1 Modes of address

By a law promulgated in June 1934, every Turkish family was obliged to choose a surname. The old titles *Paşa*, *Bey*, *Efendi* for men, and *Hanım* for women, all of which followed the given name, were replaced by the invented words *Bay* *Mr* and *Bayan* *Mrs*. *Miss*, preceding the surname and abbreviated *B.* and *Bn.* respectively. The new terms never fully caught on, being little used except on envelopes, for official purposes and by minor public servants. For social purposes, *Bay Hasan Yürükoğlu* and *Bayan Selâle Öztürk* continued to be referred to and addressed as *Hasan Bey* and *Selâle Hanım*. Even on envelopes, *Bay* has long been fighting a losing battle against *Sayın* (*Honoured*) and its abbreviation *Sn.*

In theory this title is applicable to both sexes, but is in fact rarely used of women. *Sayın* before the surname is the usual formal mode of addressing men. It is not used as a noun, however, and many bus-drivers and conductors who used to address their passengers as *Baylar*, by the 1980s had come round to calling them *Beyler*. The officially obsolete *Paşa* is still popularly used for generals and admirals. Within Turkish diplomatic missions, the ambassador (*Büyükelçi*) is referred to as *Elçi Bey*, *elçi* meaning *envoy*.

*Efendi* formerly a title of princes of the Ottoman dynasty, religious dignitaries and other literates, is still used after the given names of manservants: *İbrahim Efendi*. In the expressions *efendiden bir adam* 'a man from [the category] *efendi*' and *efendi adam*, it has much the same connotation as *gentleman*. *Hanım* similarly connotes *lady*, but a ladylike woman or girl may be termed *efendi kadın* or *efendi kız*.

Courteous terms of address for men and women respectively are *Beyefendi* and *Hanımefendi*. *Efendim* is addressed to women or

children as well as to men, despite its literal sense of 'my lord'. It is used like our *I beg your pardon?* to ask for repetition of something not clearly heard. It is also used to give one time to think between words: *Her türlü meyvaya var . . . efendim . . . elma, armut, incir . . . efendim . . . portakal* *There's every kind of fruit: er . . . apples, pears, figs . . . er oranges.*

*Usta* *master craftsman* is a polite term of address for anyone skilled in his trade — not just artisans but also taxi-drivers and waiters.

It is remarkable how kinship-terms are regularly applied to people not of one's own family, even to strangers encountered in the street. A person of one's own age-group may be addressed as *kardeşim*, a somewhat older person as *agabey* (pronounced *âbî*) 'elder brother' or *abla* 'elder sister', and someone manifestly older as *amca* 'paternal uncle' or *teyze* 'maternal aunt'.

There are countless terms of endearment, among them *canım* ('my soul'), *sekerim* ('my sugar') and *iki gözüm* ('my two eyes').

Although the harem is a thing of the past, there are still men in Turkey who feel their privacy has been invaded if a man outside the family asks, 'How's the wife?' Such enquiries are best avoided except with people one knows well, when an acceptable formula is: *Yenge hanım nasıl?* 'How is the lady my-brother's-wife?'

Distinguish very carefully between *karikoca* 'wife-husband' a *married couple* and *kocakarı old hag*.

### 2 The Arabic and Persian element in Turkish

This section will be found of more than historical interest when reading anything published before the 1960s. Besides borrowing large numbers of words from Arabic and Persian, Ottoman Turkish took over some features of their syntax. The chief borrowing from Persian was the device used in that language to link two nouns, or noun and adjective, which is the reverse of the Turkish practice: that is, in Persian the qualified noun comes first, then an *î*, then the qualifier, as in *koh-i-nur* and *koh-i-bozorg*, respectively *mountain of light* and *great mountain*. Also borrowed from Persian was the convention of making Arabic adjectives agree in gender with their nouns (although Persian, like Turkish, has no grammatical gender). One achievement of the language reform has been to get rid of this affectation.

The fifty-year-old campaign to eliminate all Arabic and Persian influences from Turkish suffered a check on 11 August 1983 when the Türk Dil Kurumu (the Turkish Language Society), which had pioneered the movement, was brought under state control and given a more conservative council of management. The immediate result was that people whose instinct was to use the older words no longer felt constrained to avoid them. But most of the innovations made before that date are probably irreversible, much of the vocabulary of the 1950s being unfamiliar to younger Turks.

To take one example, *disappointment* used to be *sukut-u hayal* 'collapse of imagining', two Arabic words joined according to the rules of Persian. The hyphen was to show that the vowel after it was not the Turkish third-person possessive suffix but the linking Persian *i*, appearing here as a result of vowel harmony. In a vain effort to make the term look less alien, the spelling was changed to *sukutuhayal*. Next, the expression was partially turkicised by joining the two Arabic words according to the rules not of Persian but of Turkish: *hayal sukutu* 'imagining collapse-thereof' (the final *u* being the Turkish suffix of the third person). This is still widely used. The next stage was to replace the Arabic *sukut* with the Turkish *kırıklık brokenness*: *hayal kırıklığı*. Then the more ardent purists substituted for the Arabic *hayal* the Turkish *diş dream*, so for *disappointment* they said and still say *diş kırıklığı*.

A Persian suffix still in use is *-hane house*; with *kütüp books* (the Arabic plural of *kitap*), it makes *kütüphanane library*. With the Persian *gay* it makes *gayhane tea-house*. With the Turkish *yatak bed*, *yazi writing*, *yemek food*, it makes *yatakhane dormitory*; *yazhane office, desk*; *yemekhane refectory*. The suffix is usually contracted to *-ne* after a *in postahane post office* (*postane*), *hastahane hospital* (*hastane*) and *eczahane pharmacy* (*eczane*), but not *pastahane pastry-shop*.

Some Arabic plurals are still in occasional use (just as we may still use *media*, *phenomena* and *cherubim*): *müşkül difficult*, *müşkülât difficulties*; *zat person*, plural *zevat* as well as *zatar*. *Eşya* (the Arabic plural of *şey thing*) has a different sense from *şeyler*; it means *furniture, belongings*. *Ecza* (plural of *cüz part*), means *drugs, chemicals or the unbound parts of a book*. The quasi-Arabic plural *gidisat*, jocularly manufactured from *gidis manner of going*, means *goings-on*.

The Arabic verbal nouns which, with *etmek*, make compound

verbs in Turkish, retain their verbal force and can take a direct object even in the absence of *etmek*:

Konya'yı ziyaret ettik *We have visited Konya*  
Konya'yı ziyaretimiz ertelendi *Our visiting Konya has been postponed*

The Arabic preposition *ila to, towards* is used between numbers: *Dört ila beş bin kitaplık bir kütüphanesi var* *He has a library of four to five thousand books*. See the second paragraph of 6.7 for this use of *-ilk* - *kitaplık* here is not the neologism for *library*.

Two postpositional expressions of Arabic origin are *leh and aleyh*, originally meaning *for him and against him* respectively. In Turkish, they may be used with the personal suffixes to mean *for or against*: *Lehimizde olmayan aleyhimizedir* *He who is not for us is against us*.

One of the hardest-worked Arabic borrowings was the long *i* added to nouns to make adjectives. In Turkish it used to be written with a circumflex accent where confusion with similar words might otherwise have arisen: *tarih history*, *tarihi its history*, *tarihiî historical*; *ilim science*, *ilmi its science*, *ilmiî scientific*. But note *iktisat economy*, *iktisadi its economy*, *iktisadi economic*.

More recently, however, the reformers have recommended dropping the circumflex, so that *tarihi* now serves for both *its history* and *historical*. The reasoning is that it is not worth retaining a special rule for a group of words of which most have disappeared and the rest are likely to follow them into oblivion.

### 3 The suffix *-sel*

Among the Arabic borrowings for which no satisfactory native replacement has yet been found are *tarih history* and *siyaset politics*. But the reformers have succeeded in getting rid of the Arabic adjectival suffix, replacing *tarihi historical* and *siyasi political* with *tarihsel* and *siyasal*. One of the most controversial of all neologisms, *-sel*, with its by-forms *-l* and *-el*, has become part of the language. It is added to nouns, real or invented, Turkish or foreign, to make adjectives:

*bölge region*, *bölgesel regional*; *gelenek tradition*, *geleneksel traditional*; *kimya chemistry*, *kimyasal chemical*; *Tanrı God*,

Tamrisal *divine*; yazın *literature*, yazınsal *literary*; Anayasa *Constitution*, anayasal *constitutional*; öz *self*, özel *private*; doğa *nature*, doğal *natural*

#### 4 Compound nouns

We have already met several examples of the combination of two nouns, such as kızkardeş 'girl-sibling' for *sister*, Anayasa 'mother-law' for *Constitution*, başkent 'head-city' for *capital*. In some compounds, the second noun has the third-person suffix:

denizaltı 'sea underneath-thereof' *submarine*; hanmeli 'lady hand-thereof' *honeysuckle*

Cuma *Friday* and pazar *Sunday* are combined with erte *tomorrow* to make cumartesi *Saturday* and pazartesi *Monday*.

There are also nouns compounded of an adjective and noun:

karabas 'black head' *Anatolian sheep-dog*; karayel 'black wind' *north-wester*; büyükbaba *grandfather*; büyükelçi 'great envoy' *ambassador*

Some noun compounds include a verb, such as the culinary terms imambayıldı 'the Imam swooned' and hükûmbegendi 'the Sovereign approved'. Unutmabeni is *forget-me-not*.

#### 5 Formation of nouns and adjectives

The following are the commonest of the suffixes added to verb stems to make nouns and adjectives:

-ç	igrenmek <i>to feel loathing</i>	igrenç <i>loathsome</i>
	kazanmak <i>to win</i>	kazanç <i>gain, profit</i>
	sevinmek <i>to be pleased</i>	sevînc <i>joy</i>

By analogy with these is formed korkunc *terrible* (compare korkmak *to fear*). Artificially formed on this pattern is the new word for *interesting* – ilginç, derived not from a verb stem but from the made-up ilgi *interest*.

-ek	batmak <i>to sink</i>	batak <i>marsh</i>
	durmak <i>to stop</i>	durak (bus) <i>stop</i>
	konmak <i>to settle</i>	konak <i>halt, mansion</i>

-gen	atılmak <i>to be thrown, hurl</i>	atılan <i>reckless</i>
	oneself	
	çekilmek <i>to withdraw</i>	çekingen <i>shy</i>
	döğüşmek <i>to fight</i>	döğüşken <i>bellicose</i>
	unutmak <i>to forget</i>	unutkan <i>forgetful</i>

There is also an invariable suffix -gen, which is added to numerals and to çok *many* to make the names of the plane figures:

gokgen *polygon*, üçgen *triangle*, dörtgen *quadrilateral*, beşgen *pentagon*, altıgen *hexagon*, and so on.

-gi	çalmak <i>to play</i>	çalgi <i>instrument</i>
	çizmek <i>to draw</i>	çizgi <i>line</i>
	duymak <i>to feel</i>	duygu <i>feeling</i>
	sermek <i>to spread out</i>	sergi <i>display, fair</i>
	yazmak <i>to write</i>	yazgi <i>destiny</i>

-gin	girmek <i>to enter</i>	girgin <i>sociable</i>
	kaçmak <i>to flee</i>	kaçkın <i>fugitive</i>
	kesmek <i>to cut</i>	keskin <i>sharp</i>
	uymak <i>to conform</i>	uygun <i>suitable</i>

-i	koşmak <i>to run</i>	koşu <i>race</i>
	ölmek <i>to die</i>	ölü <i>corpse</i>
	ölçmek <i>to measure</i>	ölçü <i>measurement</i>
	yapmak <i>to make</i>	yapı <i>construction</i>
	yazmak <i>to write</i>	yazı <i>writing</i>

-ik	açmak <i>to open</i>	açık <i>open</i>
	bozmak <i>to destroy</i>	bozuk <i>corrupt, broken</i>
	karışmak <i>to be confused</i>	karışık <i>disordered</i>

birleşmek to unite

Amerika Birleşik Devletleri

USA

-im

basmak to press, print

basım printing

dağıtmak to distribute

dağıtım distribution

demek to say

deyim saying, expression

doğmak to be born

doğum birth

durmak to stand

durum situation

ölmek to die

ölüm death

yatırmak to deposit

yatırım investment

yazmak to write

yazım spelling

yönetmek to administer

yönetim administration

-inti

akmak to flow

akıntı current

çıkınmak to come out

çıkıntı projection

süpürmek to sweep

süpürüntü sweepings

sarsınmak to shake

sarsıntı tremor

-im

anlamak to understand

anlam meaning

etmek, eylemek to do

eylem activity, verb

kavramak to grasp

kavram concept

## Vocabulary 14

belirtmek to make clear, specify

ilan etmek to proclaim,

biçim fashion, shape, kind

announce

bilim science

-le ilgilenmek to be concerned

bireysel individual (noun)

with

bireysel individual (adj.)

izlemek, takip etmek to follow

çaba effort

kamnu the public

çagdaş contemporary

kapsamak to include,

durum situation

encompass

düzen regularity, order

karar decision

ekonomi economy

karmaşık complex

faaliyet activity

neden, sebep cause

fevkalade extraordinary

nitelik quality

içermek to contain

olanaksız impossible

oluşmak to originate, arise

uygulamak to put into practice

parti political party

uzman expert

profesyonel professional

-e vakıf/vâkıf aware of,

-e sahip possessing

acquainted with

seçmen voter

verimli productive

sürmek to last, continue

yapı construction

tamamen completely

yaşam life

toplumsal social

yelpaze fan

tüm whole

zor difficult

-e ulaşmak to arrive at, attain

READING 14 On the utility of political parties This extract from a book on contemporary political science is an example of the reasonably well-balanced language of present-day academic writing. There are many neologisms, such as seçmen, birey, olanaksız, siyasal, toplumsal, and the use of neden why as a noun meaning cause, but the author does not avoid words of Arab origin, such as fevkalade, sahip, faaliyet and vakıf, he is modern but not fanatically so. Incidentally, this last word is usually spelled vâkıf, to distinguish it from the vakıf which appears in Vocabulary 12.

Bir seçmen için karmaşık bir toplumsal yapı içinde oluşan çesitli sorunlar büyük bir yelpaze oluşturabilecek, çok farklı ve tek bir bireyin hepsine vakıf olamayacağı uzmanlık alanlarını kapsayan bir biçimde çesitli "siyasal karar konusu" içerecektir. Bu konuları bir seçmenin teker teker inceleyebilmesi tamamen olanaksız olmasa bile günlerinin en verimli saatleri boyunca ve günlerce sürdürmesi gereken bir faaliyet niteliğindedir. Bu tür bir faaliyeti, siyasal yaşamla profesyonel olarak ilgilenmeyen, para ekonomisinde yaşayan, düzenli iş sahibi bir bireyin sık sık sürdürülmesi olanaksız değilse bile fevkalade zordur. Bu durumda siyasal partiler siyasal konuların tümünde veya en önemlilerinde nasıl bir uygulamanın kendilerince izleneceğini, nedenleriyle birlikte kamuya ilan ederler. Seçmenin siyasal partilerden birisini tutması halinde, yukarıda belirttiğimiz bireysel çabayla gözümü fevkalade zor olan sorun birdenbire çözüme ulaşmış olmaktadır.

(Ersin Kalaycıoğlu, Çağdaş Siyasal Bilim (İstanbul, 1984), p. 259)



## Notes

In the opening sentence, first look for the subject, then find the verb (usually at the end of the sentence). The subject will be a noun or pronoun in the absolute form and not immediately followed by a postposition or by a noun with the third-person suffix which it qualifies. This rules out *segmen* and *yapi* and leaves *sorunlar*. The words *karmasik* . . . *gesitli* precede and therefore qualify *sorunlar*. This is the subject of two verbs, *olusturabilecek* and *icerecektir*, the -*ti* of the latter applying to both.

*olusturabilecek* is the causative of *olusmak* *to originate*; with the *can* suffix -*ebil* and the future suffix: 'will be able to give rise to' *may constitute*.

*icerecektir* *will contain*: its object is not *alanlarim*, which has to be the object of the verb immediately following it (i.e. *kapsayan*, the present participle of *kapsamak*: *which encompasses*).

*kapsayan* precedes and qualifies *bir bicimde*: *in a fashion which encompasses*. The third-person suffix of *alanlarim* joins it to its qualifier *uzmanlik*. The phrase *uzmanlik alanlarim* *fields of expertise* is preceded and qualified first by *çok farkli* and then by the words *tek . . . olamayacağı*, the final third-person suffix of which must belong with the word in the genitive, *birinin*: 'pertaining to one single individual's future inability to be'.

*hepsine vakit* *acquainted with all of them*.

We see, if only by a process of elimination, that the object of *icerecektir* must be *siyasal karar konusu* *political decision topics*. The last word does not have or need the plural suffix because *geşitli* *various* is enough to show its plurality. Nor is it in the definite objective case, because the writer does not have any specific topics in mind at this point.

The student should be able to unravel the rest, with a glance at the key if necessary. It may help to point out that *sürdürmesi gereken* in the next sentence and *gözünü . . . zor olan* in the final sentence are examples of the construction explained at the end of 7.5, and that *uygulamanın* is the genitive of the -*me* verbal noun of *uygulamak*.

## Unit Fifteen

## 1 Notes on certain verbs

(a) *Bulunmak* *to be found, to be*: *Ankara'da bulunan bir arkadaşımız* *a friend of ours who is in Ankara*. It is frequently used with the locative of abstract nouns:

*Onunla çok tartışmada bulunduk* *We had an intense dispute with him* ('were found in much disputing')

*Göndermek nezaketinde bulunduğunuz kitabı aldım* *I have received the book which you were kind enough to send* ('the book of your being found in the kindness of sending')

Two examples will be found in the reading passage at the end of this unit:

*Osmanlıca dersi konulması teklifinde bulunduğum için* 'Because of my being found in the suggestion of the being-put of Ottoman lessons' *Because I have proposed introducing Ottoman lessons*

*Osmanlıca kullanılması tavsiyesinde bulunmadım* 'I have not been found in the recommendation of the-being-used-of Ottoman' *I have not advocated the use of Ottoman*

(b) *Durmak* *to stand*, when it follows the -*e* adverbial or the -*ip* form of another verb, means *to continue*: *yürüyeye durdum* or *yürüyüp durdum*. The two verbs can be in the same tense: *Bütün gün yürüdüm durdum* *All day I kept on walking*.

*Durup dururken* 'while standing and standing' means *suddenly and without provocation*.

*Söyle dursun* 'let it stand thus' means *let alone, never mind about*:

*Cevap vermek söyle dursun, mektubunu okumadım bile* *I haven't even read his letter, let alone answered [it]*

Son mekân şöyle dursun, adını da bilen yok *Never mind about his last resting-place, there isn't even anyone who knows his name*

(c) **Etme** and **yapmak** The usual equivalent of *to make* or *to do* is **yapmak**:

O size hiçbir şey yapamaz *He can't do a thing to you*

Orada ne yapıyorsun? *What are you doing there?*

Bu makina çok gürültü yapıyor *This engine is making a lot of noise*

If a normally transitive compound verb (5.8) is used without an object, **etmek** is replaced by **yapmak**:

Masrafımı hesap ediyorum *I am calculating my expenses*

Hesap yapıyorum *I am calculating*

So too if the verbal-noun part of the compound is qualified:

Bana tesir etti *It influenced me*

Bana yaptığı tesir *The influence which it had on me*

**Etme** translates *to make* as in 'ten and ten make twenty' (**on, on daha yirmi eder**) and *to do* with words meaning *good* or *bad*:

Bunu yapmakla fena mı ettim? *Did I do wrong by doing this?*

(d) **Gelmek** *to come*, when added to the *-e* adverbial form of another verb, denotes continuous action: **Bu işler böyle olagelmis** 'These affairs have continued to occur thus' *Things have always gone on in this way*. The sole exception is **çıkagelmek**, meaning not 'to keep coming up' but *to come up suddenly*.

With the ablative of the reduplicated form of the verbal noun of the aorist negative (see 8.2, end), it gives the sense of *to pretend not to*:

O girince, görmemezlikten geldim *When he came in, I pretended not to see [him]*

Uykum geldi 'my sleep has come' *I feel sleepy*

Antalya'yı göreceğim geldi 'my-future-seeing Antalya has come'

*I feel I must see Antalya*

Öyle gibime geliyor ki *It seems to me that ...*

(e) **Gilmek** *to go* is idiomatically used with the adjectives **hoş** *pleasant*, **tuhaf** *curious* and **güç** *difficult*:

Hosunuza gidiyor mu? 'Does it go to your pleasant?' *Do you like it?*; Pek hoşuma gitmiyor *I don't like it much*

Tuhafına gitti *It struck him as odd*

Güçümüze gitmedi *It did not offend us*

(f) **Kalmak** *to remain*, *be left* is used after the *-e* adverbial form of other verbs:

şaşı *he was surprised*, şaşakaldı 'he was left being surprised' *he was staggered*

donduk *we froze*, donakaldık *we were petrified*

Nerede kaldınız? *Where have you been?*

Bana kalırsa 'If it is left to me' *If you want my opinion*

Az kaldı 'little remained' *almost*; Az kaldı ağlamaya başladım *I was within an ace of starting to cry*

Kaldı ki 'There has remained that ...' *Furthermore*

(g) **Olmak** *to be, become, happen* is used with nouns to mean *to fall victim to, catch, undergo*:

Tifo oldu *He's got typhoid*; Öksürük oldu *He has caught a cough*

Sünnet olacaklar *They are going to be circumcised*

Ö gün Türkten imtihan oluyorduk *That day we were being examined in Turkish* ('were undergoing exam from Turkish')

Cehennem ol! *Go to hell!*

(h) **Yermek** *to give*, when joined to the stem of another verb by *-(y)i/ü/ü/ü*, adds the notion of speed:

Geli! *Come!* Geliver! *Come quickly!*

Otobüs durdu *The bus stopped*; Otobüs duruverdi *The bus suddenly stopped*

Büroya uğradı *She called at the office*; Büroya uğrayverdi *She made a quick call at the office*

Raporumu yazdım *I wrote my report*; Raporumu yazıverdim *I scribbled my report*

The *ver-* of such compounds is not negated; negating the stem of the first element indicates an abrupt cessation of the action: **Rapor-**

unu yazmayverdim *I suddenly stopped writing my report.*

(i) Yemek *to eat* is used of undergoing something, often but not always something unpleasant:

tokat yemek *to get a box on the ear*  
yağmur yemek *to be caught in the rain*  
gol yemek *to have a goal scored against one*  
rüsvet yemek *to take bribes*  
bir miras yemek *to receive a legacy*

## 2 Greetings and polite expressions

Merhaba is the all-purpose 'Hallo!' (except on the telephone, when Alo! is used).

Hoş geldiniz *Welcome: the response is Hoş bulduk.*

Günaydın *Good morning; İyi günler Good day; İyi akşamlar Good afternoon/evening; İyi geceler or Allah rahatlık versin 'May God give ease' Good night; Nasılsınız? How are you? – the reply may be Teşekkür ederim, iyiyim Thank you, I'm well or Hamdolsun Praise be or Çok şükür Many thanks [to God]. Then comes Siz nasılsınız?*

The equivalent of our informal *How's things?* is *Ne var ne yok?* 'What is there and what isn't there?' The stock reply is to the first part only: *İyilik sağlık Goodness [and] health.*

On being introduced, both parties say *Memnun oldum* 'I have become pleased'. Elderly people appreciate the older formula *Müsterref oldum I am honoured*, to which the reply is *Şeref bana ait The honour belongs to me* or even *O şeref bendemize ait The honour belongs to your slave.*

For *Goodbye*, the person leaving says *Allaha ısmarladık* 'We have committed [you] to God' or, less formally, *Hoşça kalın* 'Remain pleasantly'. The person staying replies *Güle güle [Go] smilingly*. A modern equivalent of *Au revoir* is *Görüşmek üzere* 'On the basis of seeing each other [again]'.

*Etağfurullah*, the Arabic for *I ask God's pardon*, is what you say if someone praises you in terms which you regard, or affect to regard, as excessive. The nearest English is *You're too kind* or *You flatter me*. You may also use it if anyone belittles himself in your hearing by

saying something on the lines of *How stupid of me!* or *What an idiot I am!*

*Maşallah*, the Arabic for *Whatever God wishes*, expresses admiration while at the same time warding off the evil eye. It is the only acceptable formula for use when admiring children. The underlying idea is that God can do whatever He wishes; He can even make something as remarkable as this baby. To say outright *What a lovely baby!* is tantamount to inviting calamity to alight on the child; it would distress simple people and would not be well received even in sophisticated urban families. The probably inaudible response would be *Nazar degmesin! Let the Evil Eye not touch!*

When seeing someone about to eat, one says *Afiyet olsun* 'let there be health' *bon appétit*. The response is *Ömrünüz çok olsun May your life be long* or simply *Teşekkür ederim*. When refusing an invitation to a meal, the polite expression is *Ziyade olsun May there be superabundance*. Having said that, one should leave; it is the height of rudeness to watch others eating.

When offered coffee you will be asked, *Nasıl içersiniz? How do you drink [it]?* The alternatives are: *sade plain = şekeriziz sugarless; az, orta or çok şekerli little, medium or much sugared*. If in doubt, say *Orta*.

When taking leave one says *Bana müsaade* 'Permission for me' *If you'll excuse me* . . .

When entering a place where people are working, use the expression *Kolay gelsin May it come easy*.

If someone sneezes, you may say *Çok yaşa! Live long!* The reply is *Sen de gör! And you too see [me doing so]*.

When a friend pays the bill or buys the tickets, you say *Kesenize bereket* 'Blessing to your purse'.

*Sizde kalsın* 'let it remain on you' or just *Kalsın* means *Keep the change*.

*Baş üstüne* 'On the head' is still used for *On my head be it. It shall be done*.

*Excuse me* is *Affedersiniz* or *Kusura bakmayın* ('Do not look at the fault'). The former, in addition to its obvious uses, is said by unsophisticated people when mentioning anything unclean, which includes dogs though not cats:

*Dükânda – affedersiniz – bir köpek vardı There was – excuse the expression – a dog in the shop*



### 3 Doublets

We have met several instances of the doubling of words to denote intensity or emphasis (see 4.8; 5.4, 12 (end)). Besides the *kutu nutu* locution noted in 11.5, Turks are very fond of using pairs of similar-sounding words, like our *kith and kin*:

*çoluk gocuk* wife and family  
*boy bos* size and shape  
*is güç* 'work toil' employment  
*yatak yorgan* 'bed quilt' bed and bedding  
*yorgun argın* 'tired emaciated' dead bear  
*ufak tefek* small and trifling  
*alaca bulaca* all the colours of the rainbow

**Çoluk, bos, tefek, bulaca** occur only in these expressions.

Suffixes may be added to both elements:

*boyu bosu* yerinde bir adam 'his size and shape in their place a man' a well-built man  
*ışsız gücsüz* unemployed

Words which imitate sounds are usually doubled:

*sapır şupur* örnek to kiss noisily and repeatedly  
*horul horul* horlamak to snore like a pig  
*gıur gıur* etmek to creak

A common colloquial way of emphasising an adjective is seen in: *Babası zengin mi zengin! Is her father rich? Rich!* (much like the American *Is he rich or is he rich?*).

### 4 The verb, summary of tenses

The various tenses of the verb fall into two classes, **A** and **B** in the following table, the distinction being that the forms under **A** use the suffixes of *to be* for their personal endings (like the English *I am/was coming, he is/was coming*), while those under **B** have their own endings (like *I come, he comes*).

A		B		
<i>in fact coming</i> geliyor	<i>I am ...</i> geliyorum	<i>I was ...</i> geliyordum	<i>if I am ...</i> geliyorsam	<i>it appears that I am ...</i> geliyormuşum
<i>in principle coming</i> gelir	gelirim	gelirdim	gelirsem	gelirmişim
<i>about to come</i> gelecek	geleceğim	gelecektim	geleceksem	gelecekmışim
<i>having come</i> gelmiş	gelmişim	gelmiştim	gelmişsem	gelmişmişim
<i>obliged to come</i> gelmeli	gelmeliyim	gelmeliydim		gelmeliymişim

<i>he came</i> geldi	<i>I came</i> geldim	<i>I had come</i> geldiydim	<i>if I came</i> geldiysem/geldimse
<i>if he were to come</i> gelse	<i>if I were to come</i> gelsem	<i>if only I had come</i> gelseydim	

### Vocabulary 15

**-e alışmak** to be accustomed to

**ancak** only

**Arapça** Arabic language

**ata** ancestor

**aydın** intellectual

**basit** simple

**bellirmek** to make clear

**cevrimek** to be turned,

*translated*

**ders** lesson, class

**doğru** straight, correct

**-den dolayı** on account of

**düşünce** thought, idea

**edebiyat** literature

**emek** toil, effort

**fark** difference, differentiation

**Farsça** Persian language

**felsefe** philosophy

**felselfi** philosophical

**fikir (-kri)** idea, thought

**gayet** extremely

**geniş** broad, wide

gerici <i>reactionary</i>	kullanmak <i>to use</i>
hareket etmek <i>to act, move</i>	kural <i>rule</i>
hayran <i>admirer</i>	kültür <i>culture</i>
-den hoşlanmak <i>to be pleased with</i>	lise <i>secondary school, lycée</i>
hüküm (-kümü), yargı <i>judgment</i>	lügat(-ti), sözlük <i>dictionary, vocabulary</i>
peşin hüküm, önyargı	mecburî, zorunlu <i>compulsory</i>
prejudice	öz <i>pure</i>
icat <i>invention</i>	peşin <i>prior</i>
icad etmek <i>to invent</i>	polemik <i>polemics</i>
ilim (-lmi), bilim <i>scholarship, learning</i>	sanat <i>art</i>
ilmi, bilimsel <i>scholarly, scientific</i>	sapmak <i>to go astray, deviate</i>
ince <i>fine, subtle</i>	saymak <i>to count, consider</i>
incelemek <i>to study</i>	Tanzimat <i>reform period</i>
kafa <i>head, mentality</i>	beginning <i>in 1839</i>
karşılmak <i>to meet, cope with</i>	tavsiye <i>recommendation</i>
karşılık <i>equivalent</i>	teknik <i>technique, technology</i>
kavram <i>concept</i>	tercime <i>translation</i>
kesin <i>keen, decisive</i>	toptan <i>wholesale, totally</i>
kitle <i>mass</i>	-e uygun <i>in conformity with</i>
kolayca <i>easily</i>	-e varmak <i>to arrive at</i>
kök <i>root</i>	yanlış <i>mistake, mistaken</i>
	zarurî, zorunlu <i>obligatory</i>
	zengin <i>rich</i>

READING 15 *Compulsory Ottoman?* This is an extract from an article on 'The Language of Culture and Literature' by a scholar of the older generation, whose attitude to language was conservative but not reactionary.

Bazı yazı ve konuşmalarında liselere mecburî Osmanlıca derisi konulması teklifinde bulunduğum için, birçokları beni Osmanlıca hayranı kabul ederek gerici sayarlar. Böylelerinin peşin hükümle hareket ettiklerine inandığım için cevap vermem. Düşünceleri doğru yoldan saptırdığından dolayı polemikten de hoşlanmam. Burada bir kere daha belirtiyim ki, ben dil olarak Osmanlıca hayranı değilim. Hiçbir zaman da bugünkü yazı dilinde Osmanlıca kullanılması tavsiyesinde bulunmadım. Okuyucularım bilirler ki, ben yazılarımı geniş kitlenin kolayca anladığı "yaşayan dil" ile yazıyorum. Öz

Türkçeliğin de toptan aleyhinde değilim. Heri, çağdaş Batı dillerindeki ilmi ve felsefi eserlerin Türkçeye aynı incelik, açıklık ve kesinlikle çevrilebilmesi için, Türkçe köklerden, Türk dilinin kurallarına uygun, yeni kelimeler icadının zarurî olduğuna inanıyorum. Tanzimat'tan bu güne kadar Türk aydınları, bizim dilimizde bulunmayan kavramlara karşılık Arapça Farsça ve Türkçe köklerden pek çok yeni kelime icad etmişlerdir. Biz, bunlara alıştığımız için, yeni olduklarının farkına bile varmıyoruz. Ancak eski yazı dili ile yeni yazı dilini ilmi olarak inceleyenler, bu yeniliklerin farkına varabilirler. Bütün bu emeklere rağmen, Türkçe, bugün de Batı'nın ilim, felsefe, sanat ve teknolojiyi karşılayacak bir lügat zenginliğine sahip değildir. Batılı dillerden yapılan tercümelelerin büyük bir kısmı yanlış ve okunmaz halde dir.

Öyleyse ben neden liselerde "mecburî" Osmanlıca derisi okutulmasını teklif ediyorum? Cevabı gayet basit. Atalarımız eserlerini o dile yazmışlar da ondan.

(Mehmet Kaplan, "Kültür ve edebiyat dil", *Türk Dili*, Feb. 1986, p. 184)

#### Notes

Öz: Türkçelik (usually written as one word) is the doctrine of the exponents of *öz Türkçe* *pure Turkish*, stripped of all foreign borrowings.

İlim is also used for *science* in the broad sense. The new word for it is *bilim*, from *bilmek* *to know*, with an adjective *bilimsel* to replace the Arabic *ilmi*. *Science* as distinct from *arts* is still *fen* (-nmi); the only replacement the neologists have suggested for it is *teknik*.

Farkına varmak 'to arrive at the differentiation of it' means *to be aware of it, perceive it*. A related expression is *farkında olmak* 'to be in the differentiation of it'; *farkında olmadım* *I hadn't noticed*.

## Dialogues

The Turkish of these dialogues is idiomatic, so the English in the key is not a literal translation. To take an obvious example, we often preface what we have to say with 'Well,' a practice which has no Turkish equivalent.

1 *Hava alanında*

**Smith** Affedersiniz. Şoförlü bir araba beni karşılayacak sanıyorum. Adam Smith.

**Orhan** Evet efendim. Şuradaki ofise sorar mısınız? Danışma bürosuna değil, sağdaki küçük ofise.

**Smith** Affedersiniz. Şoförlü bir araba beni karşılayacak diye bekliyordum. Adam Smith.

**Ayşe** Evet efendim. Bir dakka. Kendi adınıza mı seyahat ediyorsunuz, yoksa şirketinizi mi rezervasyonu yaptırıldı?

**Smith** Bilmiyorum, belki Londra Üniversitesi adına rezervasyon yaptırılmıştır.

**Ayşe** Londra Üniversitesi. Ah, evet, beyefendi. Burada bir mesaj var. On altı otuzda, yani saat dört buçukta iki sıhr üç numaralı uçuşla bir yolcu daha geliyor, Heidelberg'den; araba gelip her ikinizi birden karşılayacak ve sizi Konferans Merkezine götürecektir.

**Smith** Ama daha ona yarım saat var.

**Ayşe** Yok, yirmi dakka, efendim. Çok özür diliyorlar. Bu işe tahsis ettikleri sadece bir araba var, o da bütün gün bir oraya bir buraya mekik dokuyor. Bara gitmeyi mi arzu edersiniz, yoksa size kahve gay falan getireyim mi buraya?

**Smith** Teşekkür ederim. Bara giderim. Beni oradan çağırır mısınız, lütfen?

**Ayşe** Hayhay.

2 *Otelde*

**Roberts** Günaydın. Benim adım Roberts. Rezervasyon yaptırdım telgrafta İngiltere'den. Tek kişilik bir oda, banyolu, bir hafta için.

**Kenan** Elbette. Bir yaslık daha ister miydiniz? dördüncü katta, dört yüz elli altı numara.

**Roberts** Çok teşekkür ederim. Odanın geçesi ne kadar?

**Kenan** On dört bin lira, kahvaltı dahil.

**Roberts** Pahalı değil.

**Kenan** Değil efendim. Hem de kahvaltılarımızdan memnun kalacaksınız.

**Roberts** Pekâlâ. Deftere imza mı lazım?

**Kenan** Evet, ama acelesi yok. Odanızı görüp indikten sonra da olur. Aynı zamanda pasaportunuzu da göstermenizi rica edeceğim. Asansörümüz var, sağda. Bagajınızı bu delikanlı taşıyacak odanıza. Anahtar da onda.

(*Roberts asansöre girer, yukarıya çıkar. On dakka sonra resepsiyona döner.*)

**Roberts** Lütfen bana yardım eder misiniz?

**Kenan** Hayhay, buyurun.

**Roberts** Bir iki küçük ricam olacak. Odamdaki masa biraz ufak. Oysa ben gazeteciyim, İstanbul'dayken yazı yazmak istiyorum, daha büyüğü varsa pek iyi olurdu.

**Kenan** Tabii efendim. Dördüncü katın holünde güzel büyük bir yazı masası var. Odanıza onu koyalım. Başka bir arzunuz var mıydı?

**Roberts** Yatagımda yalnız bir tek battaniye var. Bir tane daha verir misiniz?

**Kenan** Elbette. Bir yaslık daha ister miydiniz?

**Roberts** Hayır, bir tane yaslık yeter.

**Kenan** Peki efendim. Başka bir arzunuz?

**Roberts** O kadar, sanırım. A, şimdi aklıma geldi, teleks'iniz var mı?

**Kenan** Var tabii, iç büroda. Gece gündüz açıktır.

**Roberts** Teşekkür ederim, yarın sabah kullanmam gerekecek.

**Kenan** Tabii efendim. İyi geceler.

## Notes

Odanın geçesi 'the room's night', i.e. the price of the room per night. daha büyüğü *a bigger one* 'the more big-of-it', i.e. of the category 'table'.

3 *Trende*

Mary Brown Merhaba çocuğum. Senin adın ne?

Nur Sömmöz Adı Gül. Hanıma 'Merhaba' de, Gül.

Gül Merhaba.

Mary Merhaba. Kaç yaşındasın sen?

Nur Yedi. Yabancılar karşısında biraz utangaçtır ama evde susmak bilmez.

Mary Benim kızım gibi. Benimkisi dokuz yaşında. Her gün okuldan eve geldiğinde o günün bütün hikâyesini dinleriz. Buna mukabil, oğlum bize hiçbir şey anlatmaz.

Nur Yaaa. Benim de iki oğlum var. Evde olduklarında ya bir köşeye oturup kitap okurlar, ya da televizyon seyredeler. Ama çoğunlukla dışarda arkadaşlarıyla beraber oynuyorlar, eve sadece yemeye ve uyumaya geliyorlar.

Mary Kaç yaşındalar?

Nur Biri on bir, öbürü on dört. Ya sizinkisi?

Mary On üç.

Nur Çocuklarınız bugün sizinle beraber değil mi?

Mary Hayır. Ben Eskişehir'de, çimento fabrikasında çalışan kocamı ziyarete gidiyorum. Ben bir hafta orada kalacağım, bu arada annem de yanlarında oturacak. Okul varken onları bırakmak, tatil zamanında bırakmaktan daha kolay.

Nur Doğru. Ben de Elazığ'daki annemi ziyarete gidiyorum. Son zamanlarda sıhhati pek iyi değil, Gül'ü götürürsem negesi yerine gelir diye düşündüm. Oğlanlar babalarıyla başlarının garesine bakabiliyorlar.

*Note*

For the -si of Benimkisi, see 13.3, end.

Yaaa, like Yaa in Dialogue 5, indicates a drawn-out pronunciation of ya. *Yes indeed, that's how it is.*

4 *Garajda*

Smith Merhaba. Bagajda patlak bir lastik var. Bir bakıp tamir edilip edilemeyeceğini söyler misiniz?

Mehmet Valla, iç kısmında ümit yok. Lastik de epeyi eskimiş.

Smith Şu anda yeni bir lastik almak istemiyorum. Yedeğin içini yenileyip takar mısınız?

Mehmet Her iki arka tekerlek kötü, yedek de kabaklaşmış.

Smith Yok canım, o kadar kötü mü? Hem, başka bir yerden lastik alırsam her zaman gittiğim garajdaki usta kızar. Tekerleği değiştirip, çıkardığınızı da bagaja koyuverin. Bunu yapmanız ne kadar zaman alır?

Mehmet Yarım saat. Önce bu elimdekini bitirmem lazım. Anahhtarları kontakta bırakın, ben buraya çekerin.

Smith Peki. Teşekkürler. Yarım saat sonra dönerim.

*Notes*

Valla *Honestly*, a shortening of *Vallahı*, literally 'By God' but not as strong as these words are in English.

bu elimdekimi 'this one that is in my hand' *this job I'm on now.*

5 *Dişçide*

Smith Günaydın.

Dişçi Günaydın. Problem nedir?

Smith Şurada bir ağrı var, burada, üstte, sağda. Dün gece hiç uyuymadım.

Dişçi Bakalım efendim ... Evet. Pardon. Acıyor, değil mi?

Smith (Ham hum eder).

Dişçi Yaa, acıyor. Burada biraz çürük var, ama esas problem ağız ülserinden kaynaklanıyor, burada.

Smith Dişçimi çekmenizi istemiyorum.

Dişçi Buna zaten gerek yok, ancak dönüşünüzde bu dişe baktır-malıyız. Yalnız, ülser biraz ciddi. Üzerine bu ilacı süreceğim, tadı pek hoş değil ama yarayı iyileştirir. Günde üç defa kullanınız. Önce bir ağzınızı çalkalayın. Şuraya.

Smith Teşekkür ederim, Doktor Hanım. Bu ilaç ağrıyı da durduracak mı?

Dişçi Yok, bu sadece iltihabı önlemek için, Her dört saatte bu ağrı dindirici tabletlerden iki tane alınız.

Smith Hemen almaya başlayabilir miyim?

Dişçi Tabii. Şimdi bekleme salonunda bir iki dakika beklersiniz, resepsiyonist hanım size hesabı getirir.

Smith Çok teşekkür ederim, Doktor Hanım. Allaha şmarladık. Geçmiş olsun. Güle güle.

Dişçi

## 6 Hamanda

Hilary İyi aksanlar. Banyo yapmak istiyorum ama daha önce hiç

hamama gitmedim, ve yanıma da bir şey almadım.

Yücel Ziyanı yok. Şu kabine girip soyunun.

Hilary Elbiselerimi ne yapayım?

Yücel Orada bırakın.

Hilary Ya cantamı ne yapayım?

Yücel Bir şey olmaz. Onu da elbiselerinizle birlikte bırakın.

Hilary Ama içinde pasaportum, param, herşeyim var.

Yücel Elbiselerinizin yanında bir şey olmaz ama içiniz rahat

etmiyorsa benimle de bırakabilirsiniz.

Hilary Tesekkür ederim. Çok naziksiniz.

Yücel İşte peştemalınız ve sabununuz. Takunyalar kabinde. Hazır

olunca şu kapıdan içeri gidin.

Hilary Peki ya havlu?

Yücel İşiniz bitince oradaki çocuk size bir tane verir.

Hilary Sağolun.

## Note

İçiniz rahat etmiyorsa 'if your interior/inward self is not at ease'.

## 7 Antik harabelerde/cami önünde falan

Erol Beyim, beyim! Şu paraya bakın, beyim. Çok eskidir.

Hakikidir, beyim.

Smith Ver bakayım. Kaça?

Erol On bin lira.

Smith Şaka mı yapıyorsun? Al, senin olsun. Benim daha iyi bir

fikrim var. Ben dönene kadar arabama göz kulak olmaya

kaç para istiyorsun?

Erol Beş yüz lira.

Smith Oldu.

Erol Yakayım mı, beyim?

Smith Değmez. Yollar çok tozlu.

Erol Ne olur, beyim.

Smith Eh, pekala.

Alp Ben de ona yardım edeyim mi? Ben kardeşiyim, beyim.

Smith Et bakalım. Ama gene de beş yüz lira. Ağabeyimin dediğini

yap, ha. Kavga yok. Tamam, yarım saat sonra görüşmek

üzere.

## Notes

Ben dönene kadar (see 12.7)

göz kulak olmak 'to be eye [and] ear' to be watchful.

Oldu 'it has happened' Done, OK.

Ne olur is a form of entreaty, an importunate way of saying Please. The

implication is *What will happen [if you do as I ask; it wouldn't hurt, would it]?*

Et bakalım. The et (do) is in reply to edeyim mi? (may I?). The bakalım (let's

look?) is idiomatic (compare the use of *Voysons* in French), the sense being

*Come on, let's see you do it.*

## 8 Kitapçıda

Kitapçı İyi günler, efendim. Yardımcı olabilir miyim?

Smith Önce, utak bir Türkçe-İngilizce, İngilizce-Türkçe sözlük

rica ediyorum. İyi bir sözlüğüm var ama sağa sola taşımak

için fazla büyük. Şöyle, pek şişkinlik yapmadan cepte

taşınabilecek bir şey istiyorum.

Kitapçı Bu var, hakikaten küçük, ama sadece Türkçeden İngilizceye.

Smith Yok, o olmaz.

Kitapçı Ayrıca bu var, hem büyüklük bakımından fena değil hem de

geniş kapsamlı.

Smith Yok, o da oldukça büyük. Şu nasıl?

Kitapçı Bu, efendim, aslında İngilizce konuşanlar için bir Türkçe

kılavuzu, ama arkasında yararlı bir küçük sözlük de var.

Smith Türkçe kılavuzu, öyle mi? Bu bayağı yararlı olabilir. Bir

bakayım. Evet, hakikaten kullanışlı görünüyor. Haçmi de

iyi. Tamam; bunu alayım.

Kitapçı Başüstüne, efendim. Başka bir arzunuz var mıydı?

Smith Evet, bir de hediyeelik bir kitap arıyordum. İçinde bol

fotoğraf olan, İstanbul manzaraları olan cinsten bir şey.

Kitapçı O tip bütün kitaplar burada sergilenmiş halde. Bakmak ister

miydiniz?

Smith İstemezdim, ama gene de bakayım.

## 9 Takside

Smith Taksit!

Ali Nereye?

Smith Hava alanına. Yalnız, yolda durup bazı şeyler almak

istiyorum.

Ali Ne gibi şeyler?

Smith Bir kere lokum almak istiyorum.



- Ali Hava alanından da alabilirsiniz.  
 Evet, alabilirim, doğru. Ama, ondan başka, biraz badem ezmesi biraz da su portakal kabuğu içli çikolatalardan almak istiyorum. Yol üzerinde bildiğiniz iyi bir pastahane varsa önünde duralım.
- Ali Başüstüne. Başka?
- Smith Karım taze simit götürmemi istedi. Yolda simitçi görürsek bir duralım da altı tane simit alayım.
- Ali Oldu. Uçağınız kaçta?
- Smith Bavulları saat on birde teslim etmem gerekiyor. Yeterince zamanımız var, değil mi?
- Ali Günün bu saatinde rahatça yetiştirebiliriz. Yeterince bakalım, gidiyoruz.

*Notes*  
 portakal kabuğu içli is the adjectival form of portakal . . . içi 'orange-peel-interior', the third-person suffix of iç disappearing when -li is added (see 3.8, last paragraph). The meaning is with orange-peel filling.  
 Simit, a ring-shaped bread-roll of fine flour, usually covered in sesame seeds.

## Key to the Exercises

- 1.1 1 From the bridge; of the houses; to the girl; from the money; in the steamer; to the buses. 2 We are drinking tea in the garden. 3 I see [some] girls; I see the girls. 4 Ahmet is going to Ankara today. 5 I am taking the coffee from the girl. 6 This steamer is going from Istanbul to Izmir. 7 I see a child in the garden. 8 I am giving the ball to the child. 9 This little girl is going tomorrow from the village to the city. 10 I see Ahmed on the bridge.
- 1.2 1 Topu çocuklara veriyorum. 2 Vapur, Türkiye'den İngiltere'ye gidiyor. 3 Kızları otobüste görüyorum. 4 Yarın Ankara'da Ahmet'i görüyorum. 5 Küçük vapurda kahve içiyoruz. 6 Çocuk, bugün Ankara'dan köye gidiyor. 7 Kız, çocuğa bir elma veriyor. 8 Ahmet, bahçede çocuklara topu gösteriyor. 9 Kız, topu çocuklardan alıyor. 10 Orhan'a bu parayı bugün veriyorum.
- p. 26 *For practice* 1 Açım. 2 Ağ değilim. 3 Türk değil(dir). 4 Öğrenciyiz. 5 Öğrenci değiller. 6 Hazır değiliz. 7 Hazırız. 8 Haklısın(ız). 9 Sorumlusun(uz). 10 Hastadır.
- p. 29 *For practice* 1 pasaportum, 2 ayagın(ız), 3 annesi, 4 yüzü, 5 tekerleği, 6 önerimiz, 7 kitabın(ız), 8 çocukları/onların çocuğu, 9 üzümümüz, 10 karpuzu.
- 2.1 1 Has your brother gone to the station? 2 Our friends' shop is at Galata, near the bridge. 3 She bought her new car not from this man [but] from this man's father. 4 Her/his daughter's house is not far from the station, it is very near. 5 The son of a neighbour of ours is going to Ankara, to the university. 6 It was not us [but] our children who went to the cinema yesterday evening. 7 Is the new director hard-working? - No, not very. 8 Was it you who wrote this letter? 9 Have our neighbours gone to their new house? 10 The

child is in his/her room. He/she is in the child's room. Your child is in his/her room.

- 2.2 1 Yeni bir araba alıyorum, eski arabamı kızıma veriyorum.  
2 Eski müdür, bu akşam Ankara'ya gidiyor, değil mi? 3 Kadın, onların yeni evini arkadaşlarına gösteriyor. 4 Komşun(uz)u her akşam Galata köprüsünde götürüyorum, işi Galata'da mıdır?  
5 Karakol, Üniversiteden uzak değil. 6 Bu, sizin kitabınız/senin kitabın değil, kendi kitabımdır. 7 Babasının işi pek mühim mi?  
8 Şimdi arkadaşının evine gidiyorum, sonra sinemaya gidiyorum.  
9 Bagajımız şimdi istasyonda. 10 Bu akşam meşgul müsünüz?

p.35 *For practice* 1 Yatak odalarında, 2 Türk edebiyatının, 3 Ankara kentine/sehrine, 4 Kıbrıs adasından, 5 Türk onbaşlıları, 6 Amerikan tarihinde, 7 Kahve dondurmaları, 8 Antalya Müzesinde, 9 Fransız adalarından, 10 İngiliz ordusuna, 11 Bahçe Sinemasında, 12 Marmara Üniversitesinin.

- 3.1 1 Riddle: It has mountains, it has no stones; it has villages, it has no roofs; it has rivers, it has no water. 2 The police officers did not even look at my passport. 3 Your friends have moved to another house, haven't they? 4 This morning we waited for you for an hour at the Islands landing-stage; why didn't you come? 5 He wanted to buy pipe-tobacco but the shop was shut. – Was there no other shop? – There was, but it had no tobacco. 6 There is an apple tree in our garden but this year it gave/has given no fruit. 7 If the girl in yellow is Orhan's sister, who is the girl in red? 8 The Conqueror took Istanbul from the Byzantines in the year 1453. 9 The State monopoly has been a great work of the republic [and] one of the country's principal sources of gain ('a principal source of gain of the country'). 10 Have you not read Yakup Kadri's book entitled *My Mother's Book*? 11 We wanted to go to the Istanbul exhibition but unfortunately we didn't have time. 12 The solution of the riddle: map.

- 3.2 1 Kızkardeşin(fiz) evli mi? – Maalesef değil. 2 Başka bir otele taşınmak istedi. 3 Bu saat yeni ise, eski saatiniz ne oldu?  
4 Kardeşini(zi) sokakta perişan bir kılıktta, paltosuz şapkasız gördüm. 5 Uzun boylu çocuk müdürün oğlu mu? – Hayır, onun kızı var, oğlu yok. 6 Adresimizi belki telefon rehberinde buldu. 7 Elma ağaçlarımız bu yıl çok meyva verdi, değil mi? 8 Yatak odam pek küçük. Otele(n)izde boş bir oda var mı? – Maalesef yok.

9 Kızkardeşim evlerimi/onların evimi almak istedi fakat ben beğenmedim, pek küçüktür. 10 Halk, memleketin gerçek efendisidir.

p.48 *For practice* 1 onunla/onun ile, 2 o haritayla/harita ile, 3 Ayşe gibi bir kız, 4 senin/sizin gibi bir kız, 5 bugün gibi bir gün, 6 bugün kadar soğuk bir gün, 7 bizim için, 8 memleket için.

- 4.1 1 Riddle: One in Istanbul, two in Izmir, none in Ankara.  
2 Why aren't you going to the Islands today? – Because the weather isn't fine. 3 We were wanting to discuss this problem with you.  
4 Yesterday, my wife and I went round the Covered Market. 5 Did you come to Turkey by plane or by train? – I came by bus. 6 I have three tickets for this evening; you're coming with us, aren't you? – Unfortunately I haven't time; tomorrow morning I'm going to Ankara, tonight I want to go to bed early. 7 On a rainy night, two horsemen were going on a lonely road. 8 I have never seen such a thing in my life. 9 There are seven days in a week. Have you learned the names of the days by heart? 10 Does the world have a city as beautiful as Istanbul? 11 It is necessary to send this letter by airmail.  
12 Solution of the riddle: the letter 'ı'.

4.2 1 Eşim, babasını görmek için Kıbrıs'a gitti. 2 Şu sarı saçlı kız sizin kardeşiniz mi? 3 Babamla/Babam ile kardeşim yeni piyesi beğenmediler. 4 Kaç bilet almak istiyorsunuz? – Bu akşam için beş tane. Cumartesi akşamı için dört tane. 5 Bir yılda genellikle üç yüz almış beş gün var, fakat 1988 bir artıktır, onda üç yüz altmış altı gün var. 6 Yeni bakan bu sabah İstanbul'dan uçakla geliyor. 7 Bu su buz gibi; bu su buz kadar soğuk. 8 Niçin bu havada şapkasız paltosuz geziyorsunuz? 9 Şu adamı tanıyor musun? Niçin bize bakıyor? 10 Maalesef kocam beni anlamıyor.

p.59 *For practice* 1a Your sister was trying to get you on the phone. 2e We came from London to Ankara by Turkish Airlines.  
3f Mehmet is in the mosque, he is praying. 4g Since February he has been living in a brand new house. 5a Weren't you going to go to the Istanbul Festival? 6d Honolulu girls, each more beautiful than the last, were waiting for our ship. 7b He is not going to the theatre; he has no money, that's why. 8c The child is making a lot of noise.

5.1 1 You will strive, be wearied, [and] at last succeed. 2 Whose is the black car over there? – I don't know; it's certainly not mine, I left my car at home [and] came by taxi. 3 Where's your friend

- from? – He's like me, a Londoner. 4 Will you be going to Turkey soon? – Not very soon; we intend to go after the summer holidays. 5 Is your father going by today's train or is he staying till tomorrow? 6 Istanbul is both our biggest and our most beautiful city. 7 That picture is bigger than the one in my room, isn't it? – Yes, but the one in your room is more beautiful. 8 Why did you sit and not help me? 9 For a year we have been looking for a house with four rooms and a big garden, [and] at last we've found [one]. 10 Will the Grand National Assembly accept this proposal, I wonder? – It will not.
- 5.2 1 Yarın sabah önemli bir toplantım var. Bundan dolayı, bu akşam içki içmiyeceğim. 2 Köşedeki adam ne yapıyor acaba? – Namaz kılıyor. 3 Büyük Millet Meclisi için Bakanın önerisini kabul etmedi? 4 Tiyatrodan sonra kentin/sehrin en güzel lokantasına gittik. 5 Şu iki kadından sarılısı, Renzi'nin eşidir. 6 Çocuğu elinden tuttu, beraber kapıdan çıktılar. 7 Ali, bu okuldaki öğrencilerden en az çalışkanı ve en akıllısıdır. 8 Bugünkü toplantıda bu konudan bahsetmiyecek miydik? 9 En güzel çiçekler burada değil, bahçenin ortasındadır. 10 Odandaki kitaplardan yüzde yirmi beşi benim.
- 6.1 1 You waited half an hour, we waited an hour and a half. 2 I'll look in again, perhaps tomorrow afternoon. 3 I believe I trod on your foot; forgive me, I didn't see. 4 Every great city changes from generation to generation. 5 This flat is just right for you. 6 I roamed round until evening, I didn't find a shoe to fit my foot. 7 This bank gives 40 percent interest on small savings accounts. 8 On 30 August 1922 the Turkish army won one of the world's greatest pitched battles. 9 My wife sews while she listens to the radio. I doze while watching TV. 10 You'll wait here for me, I'll come in five minutes. 11 Will you bring the telephone directory? – I don't know what has become of our telephone directory. I've been looking for it since yesterday evening. Will it be all right if I bring it as soon as I find it? 12 I bought these tiny oranges from the corner grocer for 20 liras each. The fruiterer in the square asked 40 each for some slightly larger ones; I found that expensive and didn't buy them.
- 6.2 *Asking the way* – Will you please help me? I want to go to the Covered Market. Whereabouts is the entrance [of it]? – It has a lot of entrances ('Its entrances are many'). You will turn into that street on the right, at the end of the street there is a mosque. The nearest gate of the market is at the other end of the mosque courtyard – that is to say, you will see it as soon as you come out of the courtyard. – Thank

you. – Not at all. Where are you from? – I'm English. I'm from Oxford. – Are you a student? – Yes, I am a student at Oxford University. – Fine. Good day. – And to you too.

7 A Riddle: It is inside the room, the room is inside it.

B At the post office – Excuse me, I wonder is there a post office in these parts? – There is; after that big shop on the left there's the yellow coloured building with 'PTT' written on it, isn't there? That's the place. – Thank you. – You're welcome ('I beg [of you]). (Enters post office, goes up to an empty position) – I want to send a letter to Ankara and two letters to England. And there are these three postcards, one of them to go to America, the others to England. – By surface mail or air mail? – The letters by air mail. There's no hurry about the postcards ('the postcards have no urgency'). I mean, if it makes a big difference, let them go by surface mail. – No, the difference is not so big. – In that case let them all go by air mail. – Very well, sir. Postcard, America, 220 liras; England, 150 liras. Letter inland, 50 liras; to England, 200 liras. That means it makes 970 liras altogether. – I also want some telephone tokens. Five please. – Within the city or inter-city? – Within the city. – Unfortunately there are none left. They'll come an hour later. – Thank you. Good day. – And to you.

C Solution of the riddle: mirror.

**Reading 8: *Is Islam incompatible with progress?*** Within the Islamic world, whose population today reaches 500 million, there is no single country which has risen to the level of the Western world; which is, to use the common expression, 'developed'. Likewise there is no 'underdeveloped' nation among the nations belonging to the Western world. Even the Balkan nations, which won their independence in the last century and have acquired their national frontiers only in the 20th century, are considerably more advanced than the most advanced of the Islamic countries. If it is ridiculous to think that 'all Western nations are superior peoples', it is equally meaningless to belittle the nations which live in the Islamic world and have shown throughout history their capability and genius in every kind of civilised activity. There have been people wishing to link the difference between [the two groups] to the difference between Christianity and Islam. Even today there are not a few who tend to link to Islam the causes of our remaining backward.



**Reading 9: Two stories of Nasreddin Hoca** A One day Nasreddin Hoca goes to the mill to grind his wheat. At one point he transfers flour from someone else's sack to his own sack. The miller, who sees this, says, 'Hey, Hoca! What are you doing?' The Hoca says, 'Nothing. I'm mad.' The miller asks, 'Seeing that you're mad, why don't you put flour from your own sack into someone else's sack?' The Hoca replies, 'I'm not that mad.'

B On a cold winter night, the sound of people quarrelling is heard from the street. The Hoca and his wife look out through the window [and] try to understand the reason for it, but no meaning emerges from the noise. The Hoca is consumed with curiosity and takes up his quilt so as not to feel the cold, goes downstairs and approaches the quarrellers. In the twinkling of an eye, one of the quarrellers takes the quilt from the Hoca's back and runs away. The other disappears too. The Hoca, unable to do anything about it, returns home. In the house his wife asks with curiosity, 'Why did it turn out they were quarrelling?' The Hoca says, 'It seems the quarrel was because of our quilt; the quilt went, the quarrel stopped.'

**Reading 10: Some simple science** The name 'eclipse' is given to the event of the whole or the part of a celestial body's becoming invisible because of the intervention of another body. If on a sunny day the moon comes in front of the sun, for a while we cannot see the sun. This is called a solar eclipse. In other words, the moon, while roaming around the earth, from time to time comes between sun and earth; the sun's rays strike the moon and the moon's shadow falls on the earth. On the earth's surface, in places where the moon's shadow falls a solar eclipse occurs. These places remain for a while in darkness.

Now we are confronted with a new term, and that is 'satellite'. 'Satellite' means a smaller celestial body which is in a celestial body's gravitational field and rotates around it. The moon, which is the earth's only satellite, has no light of its own; it appears to us by the light it receives from the sun. From time to time our earth comes between moon and sun, the shadow of our earth falls on the moon; that is to say, because the rays coming from the sun strike the earth, the moon is left in darkness. As the moon cannot receive light from the sun, it cannot reflect light on us either. This event is called a lunar eclipse.

**Reading 11: Two more stories of Nasreddin Hoca** A Nasreddin

Hoca going one day to his neighbour asks for a big cooking-pot, takes it, and gives it back a few days later, putting a tiny cooking-pot inside it. When the neighbour who sees this asks in surprise, 'What's this?' the Hoca says, 'Your cooking-pot has had a baby'. The neighbour, rejoicing, takes both the cooking-pots. On another day, the Hoca goes again to his neighbour, asks for the big cooking-pot and takes it. But the days pass and the Hoca just doesn't bring back and return the cooking-pot; he has taken. The neighbour can't stand it; he comes to the Hoca and asks about the cooking-pot. The Hoca replies, 'Your cooking-pot has died'. When the neighbour says, 'For pity's sake, my Hoca! Do cooking-pots ever die?' the Hoca says, 'You believe the cooking-pot had a baby and why don't you believe it has died?'

B One day the Hoca sings while washing himself in the bath. In the bath his own voice seems very beautiful to the Hoca. He thinks, 'Since my voice is beautiful, let me recite a call to prayer and acquire merit'. He goes straight from the bath to the mosque, climbs up the minaret and begins to recite the call to prayer. When someone passing below calls out to the Hoca, 'Does one recite so untimely the call to prayer, in this ugly voice?' the Hoca says, 'If a bath had been built onto the minaret, then you would realise the beauty of my voice.'

**Reading 12: Side effects of dam-building** The Murad river, rising by approximately 150 metres since the Keban Dam was built, has brought into existence a dam lake, roughly 100 km long from west to east, narrowing and widening, and containing islands and peninsulas. From the point of view of communications, it has separated Elazığ and Tunceli. Communication in this region can be effected by ferries which operate between various points. It is possible to cross over by ferry in 15-20 minutes from the quay, on the Elazığ side of the dam lake, of the old Elazığ-Pertek highway. As for the beautiful arched bridge which in the old days used to be at a place near this quay, today it has been left under some 100 metres of water. Again, Pertek Castle, situated on a high hill, has become an island because of the dam lake which has risen some 150 metres. As for the Baysungur and Celebi Ali mosques, they have been moved by the Directorate-General of Pious Foundations to the town of Pertek, which is higher, and have been restored. When one looks northward from the landing-stage on the Elazığ side, it is possible to discern the green town of Pertek, which has abundant water, and, on the high bare mountains which surround it, the village of Sağman.

**Reading 13: Thought of going by bus?** In every city and town of Turkey there is a bus station. Bus station means the place where inter-city buses pick up and put down their passengers. Ankara's bus station is particularly striking. The interior of this big, single-storey building somewhat resembles the streets of the Covered Market. On both sides of it are ranged not shops but the ticket-windows of the bus companies. Above each window is written both the name of the company and the names of the places its buses go to, in various garish colours. The buses are generally big and comfortable, and their prices are low. After a journey of an hour or an hour and a half, there is a stop, at a tea-house or a restaurant. The driver's assistant wanders round the bus at intervals and, so that the passengers may cool off and refresh themselves, he pours eau-de-cologne on their hands. There is absolutely no need for the foreign tourist who travels by bus to be anxious. The other passengers will occupy themselves with him and will even point out the places to be seen along the road. Moreover, by offering food they will not leave him hungry. Most important, they will prevent the driver from carrying him past his destination. Travelling in the sleeping-car is doubtless very comfortable. But if you ask me, I recommend that those who want to see the country more closely, particularly those who don't have too much money, should apply to the bus station.

**Reading 14: On the utility of political parties** For a voter, the various problems which arise within a complex social structure may constitute a huge fan; it will contain various 'political decision topics', in a fashion which encompasses very different fields of expertise, such that a single individual could not be acquainted with all of them. Even if it were not totally impossible for a single voter to be able to study these topics one by one, it is in the nature of an activity which he would have to pursue throughout the most productive hours of his days, for day after day. It is extraordinarily difficult, even if not impossible, for an individual who has a regular job, who is not professionally concerned with political life, and who lives in the money economy, to manage to pursue continually an activity of this type. In this situation, the political parties proclaim to the public what kind of practice should in their opinion be followed in all, or in the most important, of political topics, together with their reasons. In the event of the voter's supporting one of the political parties, the

problem we have set out above, whose solution by individual effort is extraordinarily difficult, has suddenly achieved a solution.

**Reading 15: Compulsory Ottoman?** Because, in some of my articles and talks, I suggest introducing compulsory Ottoman classes into secondary schools, a number of people, taking me for an admirer of Ottoman, regard me as a reactionary. I don't answer them, because I believe that such persons act on prejudice. Nor do I like polemics, because they cause ideas to deviate from the straight road. Here let me once more make it clear that I am not an admirer of Ottoman as a language. Nor have I ever advocated the use of Ottoman in the present-day written language. My readers know that I write my articles in the 'living language' which the broad mass of people easily understand. Nor am I totally opposed to the movement for pure Turkish. I believe that, in order for it to be possible for progressive scientific and philosophical works in the Western languages to be translated into Turkish with the same subtlety, clarity, and precision, the invention of new words is essential, from Turkish roots and in accordance with the rules of the Turkish language. From the Tanzimat down to the present day, Turkish intellectuals have invented a great many new words, from Arabic, Persian, and Turkish roots, to cover concepts not found in our language. Because we are accustomed to them, we aren't even aware that they are new. Only those who make a scientific study of the old and the new written languages can be aware of these novelties. In spite of all these labours, Turkish does not possess even today a richness of vocabulary to cover the science, philosophy, art, and technology of the West. A large portion of the translations made from the Western languages are erroneous and unreadable.

If that is the case, why am I suggesting that 'compulsory' Ottoman lessons should be taught in the secondary schools? The answer is very simple. Our ancestors wrote their works in that language, that's why.

#### Dialogues

*I At the airport:* Smith, Orhan, Ayşe

*S—*Excuse me. I thought a car and driver would meet me. My name's Smith.

*O—*Yes, sir. Will you ask at the office over there? Not the information desk, the little office on the right.

- S. – Excuse me. I was expecting a car with a driver to meet me. My name's Smith.
- A. – Yes, sir. Just a moment. Are you travelling privately or did your company make the reservation?
- S. I don't know. It may have been made in the name of London University.
- A. – London University. Ah yes, sir. There's a message here. At 16.30 – that is at half past four – another passenger is arriving on Flight 203 from Heidelberg, and the car will come and meet you both at once and take you to the Conference Centre.
- S. – But that's half an hour.
- A. – No sir, twenty minutes. They are extremely sorry. There's only one car assigned to this job and it's been going backwards and forwards all day. Would you like to go to the bar, or shall I send for some coffee or tea or something for you here?
- S. – Thanks, I'll go to the bar. Will you have me called from there, please?
- A. – Certainly.
- 2 *At the hotel:* Roberts, Kenan
- R. – Good morning. My name is Roberts. I made a reservation by cable from England. A single room, with bath, for a week.
- K. – One moment, sir, let me look. Yes, sir, your room is ready – on the fourth floor, number 456.
- R. – Many thanks. What is the price of the room?
- K. – Fourteen thousand liras a night, breakfast included.
- R. – It's not expensive.
- K. – No sir, it isn't. And you will be pleased with our breakfasts.
- R. – Fine! Do I have to sign the register?
- K. – You do, but there's no hurry. It will be all right after you've seen your room and come down again. I'll ask you to show your passport at the same time. We have a lift, on the right. This young man will take your bags up to your room. He has the key. (Mr Roberts enters the lift and goes up. Ten minutes later, he returns to Reception.)
- R. – Will you please help me?
- K. – Certainly, please go ahead.
- R. – I shall have one or two small requests. The table in my room is a

- bit small, but I'm a journalist and I want to write while I'm in Istanbul. If there is a bigger one, it would be very good.
- K. – Of course, sir. In the fourth floor hall there's a fine big writing-table. Let's put that in your room. Was there anything else you wanted?
- R. – There's only one single blanket on my bed. Can you let me have another?
- K. – Certainly. And would you like another pillow?
- R. – No, one's enough.
- K. – Very good, sir. Anything else?
- R. – That's all, I think. Oh, it's just occurred to me, do you have a telex?
- K. – Yes of course, in the inner office. It's open day and night.
- R. – Thank you, I'll have to use it tomorrow morning.
- K. – Certainly, sir. Good night.
- 3 *In the train:* Mary Brown, Gül, Nur Sönmez
- M. – Hello, little girl. What's your name?
- N. – Her name's Gül. Say hello to the lady, Gül.
- G. – Hello.
- M. – Hello. How old are you?
- N. – Seven. She's a bit shy with strangers but at home she won't stop talking.
- M. – Like my little girl. Mine is nine. Every afternoon when she gets home from school, we have to listen to a full account of the whole day. My son, on the other hand, never tells us anything.
- N. – Yes, that's the way it goes. I have two boys and when they're in the house they either sit in a corner and read or watch TV. Then again they're mostly playing outside with their mates and only come home to eat and to sleep.
- M. – How old are they?
- N. – Eleven and fourteen. And yours?
- M. – Thirteen.
- N. – The children aren't with you?
- M. – No. I'm visiting my husband who's working in Eskisehir, at the cement factory. I'll be there for a week and meanwhile my mother will be staying with them. It's easier to leave them while school is on than during the holidays.
- N. – That's true. I'm going to visit my mother in Elazığ. She's not

been too well lately and I thought it would cheer her up a bit if I take Gül. The boys can look after themselves all right with their father.

4 *At the garage:* Smith, Mehmet

- S. – Hello. I've got a punctured tyre in the boot. Can you have a look at it and tell me whether it can be repaired?
- M. – Well honestly, the inner is hopeless. The tyre is pretty worn too.
- S. – I don't want to buy another tyre just at the moment. Will you replace the inner of the spare and put that on?
- M. – Both the back wheels are worn and the spare is smooth.
- S. – No, my dear fellow, is it that bad? Anyway, my regular garage-man will be upset if I get my tyres from anywhere else. Change the wheel and pop the one you take off into the boot. How long will it take you to do that?
- M. – Half an hour. I've got to finish this job first. Leave the keys in the ignition and I'll move it over here.
- S. – Right. Thanks. Back in half an hour.

5 *At the dentist:* Smith, dentist

- S. – Good morning.
- D. – Good morning. What seems to be the trouble?
- S. – There's a pain, here, at the top, on the right. Last night I couldn't get to sleep.
- D. – Let's have a look. Yes, Sorry, it's very tender, isn't it?
- S. – (gurgles)
- D. – Yes, that's it, it's hurting. There's a bit of decay here, but your real trouble is from a mouth ulcer, here.
- S. – I don't want you to take my tooth out.
- D. – There's no need for that anyway, only you ought to have this tooth looked at when you get home. But the ulcer is a bit serious. I'm going to paint this dressing on it; it doesn't taste very nice but it will make the wound better. Use it three times a day. Just rinse first. In there.
- S. – Thank you, doctor. Will this dressing stop the pain too?
- D. – No, it's simply to stop the inflammation. Take two of these pain-killers every four hours.
- S. – May I start taking them now?

- D. – Of course. Now if you'll wait in the waiting-room for a minute or two, the receptionist will bring you the bill.
- S. – Thank you very much, doctor. Goodbye.
- D. – I hope it soon gets better. Goodbye.

6 *At the Turkish bath:* Hilary, Yücel

- H. – Good afternoon. I'd like a bath but I've never been to a Turkish bath before and I haven't brought anything.
- Y. – That's all right. Go into that cubicle and undress.
- H. – What shall I do with my clothes?
- Y. – Leave them there.
- H. – What shall I do about my handbag?
- Y. – Nothing will happen to it. Leave it with your clothes.
- H. – But it's got my passport and my money and everything.
- Y. – It will be all right with your clothes, but if you're not happy about it you can leave it with me.
- H. – Thank you. You're very kind.
- Y. – Here's your wrapper and soap. The pattens are in the cubicle. When you're ready, go through that door.
- H. – What about a towel?
- Y. – The girl will give you one when you've finished.
- H. – Thanks.

7 *At the ancient ruins/in front of the mosque, etc.:* Erol, Smith, Alp

- E. – Sir, sir! Look at this coin, sir. Very old. Genuine, sir.
- S. – Let me see. How much?
- E. – Ten thousand liras.
- S. – Are you trying to be funny? Here, keep it. I have a better idea. How much do you want to keep an eye on my car till I get back?
- E. – Five hundred liras.
- S. – Right.
- E. – Shall I wash it, sir? Only fifty liras.
- S. – It's hardly worth it. The roads are very dusty.
- E. – Please sir!
- S. – Oh, all right.
- A. – Can I help him? I'm his brother, sir.
- S. – All right, help him. But still only five hundred liras. Do what your big brother says – no arguments. Very well, I'll see you in half an hour.



- 8 *At the bookshop: Bookseller, Smith*
- B. – Good morning, sir. What can I do for you?
- S. – Well, first of all I want a small English–Turkish Turkish–English dictionary. I've got a good one but it's too big to carry around. I want one to go into a pocket without bulging it too much.
- B. – Well, there's this one, very small indeed, but only Turkish–English.
- S. – No, that won't do.
- B. – Then there's this one, which isn't bad for size, and quite comprehensive.
- S. – It's a bit big. What about that one?
- B. – That's actually a phrase-book for English-speakers, sir. But there's a very useful vocabulary at the back.
- S. – A phrase-book, eh? That might be quite useful. Let me see – yes, that might be just the thing. And a neat size too. Yes, I'll have it.
- B. – Very well, sir. And was there something else?
- S. – Yes, I want a book for a present – a book of photographs, views of Istanbul, that sort of thing.
- B. – Here's a whole display of them, sir. Would you like to look through them?
- S. – No. But I shall.
- 9 *In the taxi: Smith, Ali*
- S. – Taxi!
- A. – Where to?
- S. – The airport. But I'd like to stop and pick up one or two things on the way.
- A. – What sort of things?
- S. – I want to get some Turkish Delight, for a start.
- A. – You can get that at the airport.
- S. – Yes, I could, that's true. But I'd also like some marzipan and some of that chocolate orange-peel. I think I'd like to stop at a good pastry-shop if you know of one on the way.
- A. – Right! Anything else?
- S. – Well, my wife asked me to bring back some fresh *simit*. If we see a *simit*-seller on the way, let's just stop for a minute and I'll get half a dozen.

- A. – Right. What time's your plane?
- S. – I have to be at the check-in at 11.00. We've enough time, haven't we?
- A. – It should be OK at this time of day. Right, here we go.

## List of Essential Verbs

Start learning these as soon as you can. At first it will seem hard, so consider different, even silly, ways of fixing them in your memory, e.g.: *Buy me that, Al; Look bak in anger; Old Bil knows; The matador found the bul; Draw a çek; Come here, gel; Get into gir. In Turkey as in Texas, git means go. Now carry on.*

acmak	to open	gelmek	to come
almak	to take, receive, buy	getirmek	to bring
anlamak	to understand	girmek	to enter
aramak	to seek	gitmek	to go
atmak	to throw	göndermek	to send
bakmak	to look	görmek	to see
başlamak	to begin	göstermek	to show
beklemek	to wait, expect	hatırlamak	to remember
brakmak	to leave	içmek	to drink
bilmek	to know	istemek	to want, ask for
bulmak	to find	kaldırmak	to raise
çalışmak	to work, try	kalkmak	to rise
çekmek	to pull, draw, suffer	kapamak	to shut
çıkarmak	to go out, go up	kaybetmek	to lose
demek	to say	kazanmak	to win
dinlemek	to listen	kırmak	to break
doğmak	to be born	konusmak	to speak
durmak	to stand, stop	koşmak	to run
duymak	to feel, hear	koymak	to put
düşmek	to fall	kullanmak	to use
düşünmek	to think	okunmak	to read
etmek	to do	olmak	to be, become, occur,
geçmek	to pass	mature	

oturmak	to sit, dwell	uçmak	to fly
öğrenmek	to learn	unutmak	to forget
ölmek	to die	uyanmak	to awake
sannak	to suppose	uyumak	to sleep
satmak	to sell	vermek	to give
saymak	to count	vurmak	to strike
seçmek	to choose	yapmak	to make, do
sevmek	to love	yardım etmek	to help
sormak	to ask	yaşamak	to live
söyleneek	to tell	yatmak	to lie down
tanınmak	to recognise, know	yazmak	to write
taşımak	to carry	yemek	to eat
tutmak	to hold	yürünmek	to walk

## Turkish-English Vocabulary

As well as the words in the individual vocabularies and those occurring in the Dialogues, this includes most of the more useful words introduced in the units and a few others. It presupposes a knowledge of grammar. For example, it does not give *sergilenmek to be displayed*; having found *sergi display*, the student will then have to identify the *-lenmek* as the passive form of the suffix *-lenmek* (12.6), either by remembering it or by looking in the index.

The sign ~ is used to save repeating the headword.

a <i>oh!</i>	agir <i>heavy</i>
abla <i>elder sister</i>	aguz (-gzi) <i>mouth</i>
acaba <i>I wonder</i>	aglamak <i>to weep</i>
acele <i>hurry</i>	agustos <i>August</i>
acmak <i>to feel pain</i>	-e ait <i>belonging to</i>
ag <i>hungry</i>	Akdeniz <i>Mediterranean</i>
ack <i>open</i>	akıl(-kıl) <i>intelligence</i>
acmak <i>to open</i>	aksam <i>evening</i>
ad <i>name</i>	alan <i>field, area</i>
ada <i>island</i>	alınm <i>attractive</i>
adam <i>man</i>	-e alışmak <i>to be accustomed to</i>
adaş <i>namesake</i>	Allah <i>God</i>
adet <i>number</i>	almak <i>to take, receive, buy</i>
âdet <i>custom, period (for women)</i>	Almanya <i>Germany</i>
adres <i>address</i>	alt <i>underside</i>
affetmek <i>to pardon</i>	altı <i>six</i>
afiyet <i>well-being</i>	altın <i>gold</i>
aga <i>landlord, agha</i>	altmış <i>sixty</i>
agabey <i>elder brother</i>	ama <i>but</i>
agaç <i>tree</i>	aman <i>mercy! for pity's sake!</i>

an <i>moment</i>	aynı <i>bear</i>
ana <i>mother</i>	ayırarak <i>to separate, allocate</i>
anahtar <i>key</i>	ayna <i>mirror</i>
anayasa <i>constitution</i>	aynı <i>same</i>
anayol <i>main road</i>	ayrı <i>separate</i>
ancak <i>only</i>	ayrılmak <i>to leave</i>
anlam <i>meaning</i>	az <i>little</i>
anlamak <i>to understand, realise</i>	baba <i>father</i>
anlatmak <i>to relate, to explain</i>	bacak <i>leg</i>
anne <i>mother</i>	badem <i>almond; ~ ezmesi</i>
antik <i>ancient</i>	marzipan
apartman <i>block of flats,</i>	bagaj <i>boot/trunk (car), baggage</i>
apartment <i>building</i>	bağ <i>bond, link; orchard,</i>
ara <i>interval, space between</i>	vineyard
araba <i>car, cart</i>	bağlamak <i>to tie</i>
aralık <i>December</i>	-e bağlı <i>dependent on</i>
aramak <i>to seek</i>	bahçe <i>garden</i>
Arapça <i>Arabic language</i>	-den bahsetmek <i>to mention,</i>
arasıra <i>now and then</i>	discuss
arka <i>back</i>	bakan <i>minister</i>
arkadaş <i>friend</i>	bakım <i>care, maintenance</i>
arık <i>at last, henceforth, no longer</i>	bakımdan <i>from the point of</i>
arık yıl <i>leap year</i>	view of
arzu etmek <i>to desire</i>	bakkal <i>grocer</i>
asansör <i>lift/elevator</i>	-e bakmak <i>to look at, after</i>
asıl (-sıl) <i>origin</i>	bambaşka <i>totally different</i>
asker <i>soldier</i>	banka <i>bank</i>
aslan <i>lion</i>	banyo <i>bath; ~ yapmak to take</i>
aslen <i>basically, originally</i>	a bath
at <i>horse</i>	baraj <i>dam</i>
ata <i>ancestor</i>	bar <i>bar</i>
ateş <i>fire</i>	basit <i>simple</i>
atmak <i>to throw</i>	basmak <i>to press, print; -e ~ to</i>
avlu <i>courtyard</i>	step on
avuç <i>hollow of the hand</i>	baş <i>head</i>
ay <i>moon, month</i>	başarmak <i>to succeed,</i>
ayak <i>foot</i>	accomplish
ayakkabı <i>footwear, shoe</i>	başbakan <i>prime minister</i>
aydın <i>intellectual, bright</i>	

başka other	binbaşı major
başkent capital city	-e binmek to mount, board
-e başlamak to begin	bir one, a, once, only
başlıca principal	biraz a little
-e başvurmak to apply to, have	birçok a good deal of
recourse to	birey individual
bati west	biricik sole, unique
battaniye blanket	birkaç several
bavul trunk, suitcase	birlikte together
bay Mr, gentleman (14.1)	bitmek to end (intrans.); to
bayagi downright, common	grow
bayan Mrs, Miss, lady (14.1)	biz we
bazen sometimes	Byzans Byzantium
bazi some	boğaz throat, narrows, straits
begenmek to approve, like	bol plentiful
beklemek to wait, expect	boş empty, vain
belirtmek to make clear	boy stature, height
belki perhaps	boyunca along, throughout
belli evident	bozuk damaged, broken
ben I	böcek insect
-e benzemek to resemble	bölge region
beraber together	bölmek to divide
bereket blessing, abundance	bölüm section
berri hither; -den ~ since	böyle thus, such
bes five	bu this
bey Mr (14.1)	buçuk and a half
beyefendi sir (14.1)	bugün today
bıçak knife	bulmak to find, reach
birakmak to leave	buluntu discovery, invention
biçim fashion, shape, kind	bura this place (5.1)
bile even	-den bu yana since
bilet ticket	buyurmak to deign (8.8)
bilgi learning, information	buz ice
bilgisayar computer	büro office
bilim science, scholarship	bütün all, whole
bilmece riddle	büyük big, great
bilmek to know, consider, guess	camii mosque
bin thousand	can soul
bina building	

cep pocket	çaplak bare, naked
cevap answer; ~ vermek to	çiçek flower
answer	çiğ raw, gaudy
siddi serious	çikolata chocolate
cins kind, genus	çimento cement
cisim (-smi) body	Çin China
cografya geography	çizgi line
cuma Friday	çizmek to draw
cumartesi Saturday	çocuk child
cumhuriyet republic	çoğunluk majority; ~la
cüzdan wallet	mostly, for the most part
çaba effort, striving	çok much, many; ~tan long since
çağ time, age, era	çözmek to untie, solve
çağırnak to call, invite	çözüm solution
çalışkan hard-working	çuval sack
çalışmak to work; -e ~ to try	çünkü because
çalkalamak wash out, rinse,	çürük decayed, rotten
çalgı	
çalmak to ring, steal, to play	dağ mountain
(instrument)	daha more, still, yet
çanta bag	dahi also, even
çare remedy, means	dahil included
çarpıcı striking	daima always
-e çarpmak to strike against	daire flat, apartment,
çarşamba Wednesday	department
çarşı market	dakika minute
çay tea; stream	dam roof
çayhane tea-house	danışma information,
çekiç hammer	consultation
çekim attraction	dar narrow
çekmek to pull, draw, suffer	-e dayanmak endure, rely on,
çeşit variety, sort	to lean on
çevirmek to turn, translate	de and, but, also; say!
çevre surroundings	defa time, instance, occasion
çevrili surrounded	değer register, notebook
çeyrek quarter	değer value
çıkarmak to go out/up	değil not
çınar plane tree	değirmen mill
	değişmek to change (intrans.)



değmek to be worth; -e ~ to  
touch  
deha genius  
dei mad  
delik hole  
delikanlı young man  
demek to say  
deniz sea  
denizaltı submarine  
derece degree  
deri skin, hide  
derin deep  
ders lesson, class  
dert pain, sorrow, trouble  
-e devam etmek to continue at,  
attend  
devlet state  
devre period  
deyim locution, saying  
diş exterior  
dişarı outside  
dil tongue, language  
dilemek to desire, beg  
dinlemek to listen  
dimmek to subside  
diş tooth  
diye saying (11.3)  
doğa nature  
doğmak to be born; to rise  
(sun)  
doğru straight; -e ~ towards  
doğu east  
doksan ninety  
doktor doctor  
dokunmak to weave  
-e dokunmak to touch, affect  
dokuz nine  
dolasmak to wander  
-den dolayı because of

dolmak to be filled  
dolu full; hail  
dost friend  
dökmeç to pour  
dönmek to turn (intrans.)  
dört four  
dövmek to beat  
durmak to stand, stop  
durum position  
duymak to feel, hear  
dükkân shop  
dün yesterday  
dünya world  
düşmek to fall  
düşünce thought, idea  
düşünmek to think, think about  
düz level  
düzen order, regularity  
edebiyat literature  
efendi (see 14.1)  
Ege Aegean  
eğilim tendency  
eh enough, let's go!  
ekim October  
ekmek bread  
ekonomi economy, economics  
ekonomik economic  
eksik wanting, lacking  
el hand  
elbise clothes, suit  
elde etmek to acquire  
elli fifty  
elma apple  
emek toil  
-den emin sure of  
en most  
enayi idiot  
endişe anxiety

epeni pretty well, thoroughly  
erken early  
-e etmek to attain  
erte the day after  
ertelemek to postpone  
esas base, basic  
eser work (lit. or artistic)  
eski old (things), former  
(people)  
eskimek to be worn out  
emasında in the course of  
esatfirullah (see 15.2)  
eş spouse, mate  
eşek donkey  
et (-ti) meat  
etki effect  
eimek to do  
etraf surroundings  
ev house  
evet yes  
evli married  
evlenmek to marry  
evvel first; -den ~ before  
eylemek to do (5.8)  
eyhil September  
ezan call to prayer  
ezberlemek to learn by heart  
ezmek to crush  
faaliyet activity  
fabrika factory  
faiz interest  
fakir poor  
fakat but  
falan and so forth  
fare mouse, rat  
fark difference  
Farsça Persian language  
Fatih Conqueror

Turkish-English Vocabulary 191  
fayda use, utility  
fazla excessively, too  
felsefe philosophy  
felsefi philosophical  
fen (-nni) science  
fena bad  
feribot car-ferry  
fevkalade extraordinary  
fiyat price  
fikir (-kri) thought, idea  
fincan cup  
fig form, slip, index-card  
fotoğraf photograph  
Fransız French  
futbol football  
galiba presumably  
garaj garage  
gayet very  
gazete newspaper  
gece night  
geg late  
gege past (8.5)  
-den geçmek to pass through  
gelin bride  
gelmek to come  
gemi ship  
geng young  
gene again, still  
genel general  
genellikle generally  
geniş broad, wide  
gerçek true, real, fact  
gereğince in conformity with  
gerek necessary, necessity  
gerekmek to be necessary  
geri back  
gerici reactionary  
getirmek to bring

gezmek to stroll, tour	hakiki true, genuine
gibi like	hakında concerning
gidirmek to remove	haklı right
girmek to enter	hal (-li) state, condition
gişe ticket-window	halk people
girmek to go	hamam Turkish bath, hammam
gittikçe gradually	ham hum etmek to mumble
giyinmek to dress	hanım lady (14.1)
gök sky	harabe ruins
göl lake	hareket movement; ~ etmek to move, start out
gölge shadow	harf (-fi) letter of the alphabet
göndermek to send	harita map
-e göre according to, in view of	hasta sick, ill
görev duty	hastane hospital
görevli official, officer, civil servant	hatırlamak to remember
görmek to see	hatta even
görünmek to seem	hava air, weather; ~ alanı airport
göstermek to show	havlu bath-towel
götürmek to take	hayat life
göz eye	haydi come on!
gül rose	hayhay certainly, of course
güle güle goodbye	hayır no
gülümsemek to smile	hayran admirer
gümüş silver	hazır ready, present
gün day	haziran June
günaydın good morning	hediyeye gift, present
gündüz day-time	hem moreover
güneş sun	hemen almost, at once
güney south	henüz just now
gürlemek to thunder	hep always, entirely
gürültü noise	hepsi all of it/them
güzel beautiful, fine	her every
haber news, information	herhalde certainly
hacim (-cmi) bulk, volume	her iki (. . . de) both
hafta week	hesap account, bill
hak (-ki) right, due	Hıristiyan Christian
hakikaten truly	hırsız thief

hiç nothing (10.3)	le ilgilenmek to be concerned with
hiçbir no . . . at all	ilginç interesting
hikâye story	ilim (-lmi) science, scholarship
-e hitab etmek to address	iliski relation
hoca teacher, cleric	-e ilişkin relating to
hol (-lü) hall, lobby	ilk first
hoş pleasant	ilmi scholarly
-den hoşlanmak to be pleased with	imza signature
hüküm (-kmi) judgment, verdict	-e inanmak to believe
hükümet government	inat obstinacy
ınmak river	ince subtle, fine
ismarlamak to commit, order	incelemek to study
issiz lonely	İngiliz English
ışık light	İngilizce English language
ışın ray, beam	İngiltere England
icat invention; ~ etmek to invent	inmek to descend
ıç interior	insan human being, one
ıçeri inside	İngallah God willing
ıçermek to contain	isim (-smi) name
ıçin for	iskele quay, landing-stage
ıçki alcoholic drink	İslam (İlk) Islam
ıçmek to drink	İstasyon railway station
ıdari administrative	istemek to want, ask for
ıhıyar old (person)	iş work, business, job
ıken white	ıstıtmek to hear
ıki two	ıste you see, precisely (reinforces demonstratives)
ıkram etmek to present, offer	ıyi good
ıl (capital of a) province	ızlemek to follow
ılac medicine, remedy	jandarma gendarmerie
ılan etmek to announce	jeton token
ılgı (chief town of a) sub-province	kabak bald; pumpkin
ıle with	kabarmak to swell
ıleri forward	kabiliyet capability
ılgı interest	kabin cubicle
	kabuk peel, husk

kabul etmek to accept	karpuz water-melon
kaç how many	-e karşı against
kaçmak to run away	karşılamak to meet, confront
kadar amount, as . . . as; -e ~ as far as	karşılık equivalent, answer
kadın woman, lady	-e karşın in spite of
kafa head	kartpostal postcard
kâğıt paper	kasaba town
kahvaltı breakfast	kasap butcher
kahve coffee	Kasım November
-e kala to (8.5)	kaş eyebrow
kaldırmak to raise, remove	kasık spoon
kale castle, fort, citadel	kat floor, storey; flat
kalem pen	kavga quarrel
kahın thick	kavim (-vimi) people
kalkmak to rise, depart	kavram concept
kalmak to remain, be left	kavun melon
kamu the public	kaybetmek to lose
kan blood	kaynak source, spring
kamı conviction, opinion, view	kaynak kaynaqlanmak to rise -den kaynaklanmak to rise from, originate in
kanun law	kazan cooking-pot
kapalı covered, closed	kazang gain, profit
kapamak to close	kazanmak to win, earn
kapı door, gate	kebab roast
kapmak to seize	keci cat
kapsam scope	kelime word
kapsamak to include, encompass	kelle head (animal)
kar snow	kemer arch, arched; belt
kâr profit, work	kendi self
kara black; land	kent (-ti) city
karakol police station	kere time, instance, occasion
karanlık dark, darkness	kese purse
karar decision; -e ~ vermek to decide on	kesin decide
karayolu highway	kesmek to cut
kardeş brother, sister	kez time, instance, occasion
kari wife, woman	keza similarly
karmaşık complex	Kıbrıs Cyprus
	klavuz key, guide
	kılık costume

kılmak to make (5.8, end)	koyamak to put
kırk forty	kök root
kırmak to break	köpek dog
kırmızı red	köprü bridge
kısa short	köşe corner
kısım (-sını) part, portion	kötü bad
kız girl, daughter	köy village
kızarmak to be roasted, toasted	köylü peasant, villager
kızkardeş sister	kulak ear
kızınak to be angered	kullannmak to use
ki that (12.4)	kumaş fabric, material
kibrit match	kural rule
kilim woven rug	kurum society, institution
kilise church	kurus piastre
kim who	kuş bird
kimi some	kuşak generation
kişi person	kuşku suspicion, doubt
kitap book	kuyu well
kitle mass	kuzey north
koca husband	kuzu lamb
kokmak to smell	küçük small
koku smell, scent	kültür culture
kol arm	kütüphane library
kolay easy	
kollamak to watch out for	lastik tyre
kolonya Eau de Cologne	lazım necessary
koltuk armchair	lira Turkish pound, lira
komisier police superintendent	lise high school
konferans lecture, conference	lokanta restaurant
komşu neighbour	lokum Turkish Delight
konfor comfort	Londra London
kontak ignition switch	lügat (-ti) dictionary, vocabulary
konu subject, topic	lüfen please
konuk guest	lüzum necessity
konuşmak to speak, discuss	
korkmak to fear	maalesef unfortunately, regrettably
korku fear	
korumak to protect	
koşmak to run	

madem, mademki *so long as, since*  
 mağaza *large shop*  
 mahkûm *convicted*  
 manav *fruiterer*  
 manzara *view, landscape*  
 mart *March*  
 masa *table*  
 masallah (*see* 15.2)  
 mayıs *May*  
 mecburî *compulsory*  
 meclis *assembly*  
 medeni *civilised*  
 medeniyet *civilisation*  
 mekik *shuttle; ~ dokumak to shuttle to and fro*  
 mektup *letter*  
 memleket *country, one's native place*  
 memnun *pleased, contented*  
 memur *official, officer, civil servant*  
 -e mensup *belonging to*  
 mendil *handkerchief*  
 merak *curiosity; ~ etmek to wonder; be anxious*  
 merhaba *hello*  
 merkez *centre*  
 mesaj *message*  
 mesela *for example*  
 mesele *question, problem*  
 meşgul *occupied, busy*  
 meydan *square, open space*  
 meyva, meyve *fruit*  
 mikrop *microbe*  
 millet *nation*  
 milli *national*  
 milliyet *nationality*  
 milyar *one thousand million*

mylon *million*  
 minare *minaret*  
 muavin *assistant*  
 -e mukabil *in return for, as against*  
 müddet *period*  
 müdür *director, manager*  
 mühim *important*  
 mümkün *possible*  
 müze *museum*  
 müsaade *permission*  
 Müslüman *Muslim*  
 namaz *prayer; ~ kılmak to pray*  
 nasıl *how, what sort of*  
 nazik *nice, kind, polite*  
 ne *what*  
 neden *why; cause*  
 nere *what place (5.1)*  
 neredeyse *pretty much; soon*  
 neşe *cheerfulness, joy*  
 ne var ki *but*  
 niçin *why*  
 nihayet *end*  
 nisan *April*  
 nitelik *quality*  
 niye *why*  
 niyet *intention*  
 nokta *point*  
 normal *normal, usual*  
 numara *number; mark*  
 nüfus *population*  
 o *he, she, it, that*  
 ocak *hearth, stove*  
 oda *room*  
 ofis *office, agency*  
 oğlan *boy*  
 oğul (-ğlu) *son*

okul *school*  
 okumak *to read, study*  
 olanak *possibility*  
 olay *incident, event*  
 oldukça *rather*  
 olmak *to be, become, happen, mature*  
 oluşmak *to originate*  
 on *ten*  
 onbasi *corporal*  
 ora *that place (5.1)*  
 ordu *army*  
 orta *middle*  
 Osmanlı *Ottoman*  
 otel *hotel*  
 otobüs *bus*  
 otogar *bus station*  
 otomobil *car*  
 oturmak *to sit, dwell*  
 otuz *thirty*  
 oynamak *to play, dance*  
 oysa *whereas*  
 oyun *game, play, dance*  
 öbür *the other*  
 ödev *duty*  
 öğle *noon*  
 öğrenci *pupil, student*  
 öğrenmek *to learn*  
 öğretmen *teacher*  
 ölmek *to die*  
 ömür (-mür) *life*  
 ön *front*  
 önce *first; -den ~ before*  
 öncelikle *first of all, with priority*  
 önemli *important*  
 öneri *proposal, motion, suggestion*

Turkish-English Vocabulary 197

önlemek *to prevent*  
 örneğin *for example*  
 örnek *pattern, model*  
 öte *yonder*  
 -den ötürü *on account of*  
 öyle *thus, such*  
 öz *self, essence; pure*  
 özel *private*  
 özellikle *especially*  
 özür (-zü) *apology*  
 pahalı *expensive, dear*  
 palto *overcoat*  
 para *money, coin*  
 parantez *bracket*  
 pardon *pardon, excuse me*  
 parti *political party*  
 pasaport *passport*  
 pastahane *pastry-shop*  
 patlak *punctured, burst*  
 pazar *Sunday*  
 paşa *Pasha*  
 pazartesi *Monday*  
 pek *very, strongly; strong*  
 pekâlâ *very well, excellent*  
 peki (pek iyi) *very good*  
 pencere *window*  
 perde *curtain*  
 perişan *disordered*  
 perşembe *Thursday*  
 peşin *prior, in advance; ~ hüküm prejudice*  
 pesinde *on the track of*  
 pestemal *bath-wrapper*  
 pipo (tobacco) *pipe*  
 pişmek *to cook (intrans.)*  
 piyes *play*  
 polemik *polemics*  
 polis *police, policeman*



- portakal orange  
 posta post, mail  
 postane post office  
 problem problem  
 profesyonel professional  
 PTT Post, Telegraphs,  
 Telephones  
 pul postage stamp  
 radyo radio  
 raf shelf  
 -e rağmen in spite of  
 rahat comfort, comfortable;  
 etmek to be at ease, relax  
 rahmet divine mercy  
 rakam figure  
 rehber directory, guide  
 renk (-ngi) colour  
 resepsiyon reception-desk  
 resim (-smi) picture  
 restore etmek to restore  
 rezervasyon reservation  
 rihtim quay  
 rica etmek to request  
 saat hour, watch, clock  
 sabah morning  
 sabun soap  
 saç hair  
 sade plain  
 sadece simply  
 sağ right, well, alive  
 sagol(un) thank you  
 sağlamak to ensure  
 sağlık well-being, health  
 -e sahip possessing  
 saha field, area  
 sakin beware, mind  
 salı Tuesday  
 salık vermek to recommend
- salon hall, salon  
 sanat art  
 sanki as if  
 sanmak to think, suppose  
 sapmak to deviate; -e ~ to  
 turn into (street)  
 sarı yellow  
 satmak to sell  
 savaş war, battle  
 sayesinde thanks to  
 sayfa page  
 sayın Mr (14.1)  
 saymak to count, esteem  
 sebep cause  
 seçmek to choose, discern  
 seçmen voter  
 sekiz eight  
 seksen eighty  
 sen you (thou)  
 sene year  
 sergi display, exhibition  
 serin cool  
 servis service  
 ses voice, sound  
 seslenmek to call out  
 sevap (reward for) a pious act  
 sevinmek to be pleased, rejoice  
 seviye level  
 sevgi love  
 sevmek to love  
 seyahat etmek to travel  
 seyretmek to watch  
 sıcak hot  
 sıfır zero  
 sıhhat (-ti) health  
 sık frequent(ly)  
 sınır frontier, boundary  
 sıralamak to range in rows  
 sıralı lined up, ranged in rows

- srasında in the course of  
 sırt back  
 sigara cigarette  
 silmek to wipe  
 simit simit (see note. Dialogue  
 9)  
 sinema cinema  
 siyah black  
 siyasal political  
 siz you  
 sofa hall  
 soğan onion  
 soğuk cold  
 sokak street  
 sol left  
 son last, end  
 sonra later; -den ~ after  
 sonradan afterwards  
 sormak to ask; -e, -den ~ to  
 enquire of  
 soru question  
 sorumlu responsible  
 sorun problem  
 Soyet Soviet  
 soymak to undress, strip  
 söylemek to tell, sing  
 söz words, saying  
 sözcük word  
 sözlük dictionary  
 sterlin pound sterling  
 su water, stream, river  
 suç guilt  
 suçsüz red-handed  
 susmak to be silent  
 süre period  
 sürmek to last; draw, apply  
 (ointment, etc.)  
 süt milk
- sahsen personally  
 saka yapmak to joke  
 sapka hat  
 sarap wine  
 şaşırarak to be surprised  
 şehir (-hri) city  
 seker sugar  
 sey thing, what-d'you-call-it  
 şimdi now  
 şirket company  
 şişe bottle  
 şişkin swollen, bulging  
 şoför driver, chauffeur  
 şöyle thus, such  
 şu this, that  
 şubat February  
 sura that place (5.1)  
 şüphe doubt
- tabii naturally, of course  
 tablet tablet  
 tahsis etmek to allocate  
 takım team, set  
 takmak to attach, put on  
 takunya patterns  
 tam complete, exactly  
 tamam perfect, just right  
 tamamen completely  
 tane (see 4.4)  
 tanımak to know  
 Tanzimat reform period  
 beginning with the 1839  
 Charter  
 Tanrı God  
 taraf side  
 tarafından by  
 tarih history  
 tasarruf savings

taş stone  
 taşınmak to carry  
 taşınmak to move house  
 tat taste  
 tatil holiday  
 tavsiye recommendation  
 taze fresh  
 tedbir prudence  
 tek single  
 tek el monopoly  
 tekerlek wheel  
 teker teker one by one  
 teklif proposal, motion;  
 ~ etmek to propose  
 teknik technique, technology  
 telefon telephone  
 teleks telex  
 televizyon television  
 telgraf telegraph  
 tembel lazy  
 temiz clean, decent  
 temmuz July  
 temsil etmek to represent  
 tepe peak, hill  
 tercüme translation  
 terim technical term  
 teslim etmek to hand over  
 teşekkür thanks  
 ticaret trade, commerce  
 tip sort, type  
 tiyatro theatre  
 top ball  
 toplantı meeting  
 toplum society  
 toplumsal social  
 toptan wholesale, totally  
 toz dust  
 tren train  
 tuhaf odd, strange

turist tourist  
 tutmak to hold, support  
 tutulma eclipse  
 tuvalet toilet  
 tuz salt  
 tüm whole (widely misused for all)  
 tür species  
 Türk Turk, Turkish  
 Türkçe Turkish language  
 Türkiye Turkey  
 türkü song  
 türlü sort, kind  
 tütün tobacco  
 ucuz inexpensive, cheap  
 uçak aeroplane  
 uçmak to fly  
 ufak tiny  
 -e uğramak to call at, drop in on  
 uğruna, uğruna for the sake of  
 ulaşım access, communication  
 -e ulaşmak to arrive at, attain  
 ulus nation  
 un flour  
 unutmak to forget  
 usta master craftsman (14.1)  
 utangaç shy, bashful  
 utanmak to be ashamed  
 uyanmak to wake up  
 uydu satellite  
 uygar civilised  
 uygulamak to put into practice, apply  
 -e uygun in conformity with  
 uyuklamak to doze  
 uyunmak to sleep  
 uzak far

uzman expert  
 uzun long  
 üç three  
 ülke land, country, territory  
 ülser ulcer  
 ümit hope  
 üniversite university  
 üst top  
 üzer- on (7.7)  
 üzere on  
 vagon railway coach  
 vakıf (-kfi) pious endowment  
 -e vâkıf aware of, cognisant of  
 vakit (-kti) time  
 vaktiyle formerly  
 vali provincial governor  
 valla, vallahi honestly  
 vapur steamship  
 var-existent (3.7)  
 -e varmak to arrive at  
 vazife duty  
 vaziyet situation  
 ve and  
 verimli productive  
 vermek to give  
 vesaire (vs.) etcetera (etc.)  
 VEYA or  
 vilayet province  
 vurmak to strike, shoot  
 ya or, and what about? (13.4)  
 yabancı stranger, foreigner  
 yada or  
 yadigar souvenir  
 yağmak to rain  
 yağmur rain

Turkish-English Vocabulary 201  
 yaka collar; ~lamak to catch, arrest  
 -e yakın near to  
 yaklaşık approximately  
 -e yaklaşmak to approach  
 yalan lie, falsehood  
 yalnız alone, only  
 yan side  
 -den yana on the side of  
 yani that is to say  
 yanlış mistake, mistaken  
 yansıtmak to reflect  
 yapı construction  
 yaptır work (lit. or artistic)  
 yapmak to make, do  
 yara wound  
 yararlı useful  
 yardım help  
 yarın, yarın half (5.11)  
 yarın tomorrow  
 yasa law  
 yasak prohibited; prohibition  
 yastık pillow  
 yaş age; tears  
 yaşam life  
 yaşamak to love  
 yatak bed  
 yatmak to lie down  
 yavaş slow, quiet  
 yaygın widespread  
 yaz summer  
 yazı writing, article  
 yazmak to write  
 yedek spare  
 yedi seven  
 yelpaze fan  
 yemek to eat; meal  
 yeni new  
 yenilemek to renew, replace

- yenmek to conquer, overcome  
 yer place, earth  
 yerine instead of  
 yeşil green  
 yeterince enough, sufficiently  
 yetki authority  
 yetişmek to be trained, grow  
 up; -e ~ to be in time for  
 yetmek to suffice  
 yetmiş seventy  
 yıkamak to wash  
 yıl year  
 yılan snake  
 yine again, still  
 yirmi twenty  
 yitirmek to lose  
 yiyecek food  
 yok non-existent (3.7)  
 yoksa or, otherwise  
 yol way, journey  
 yollamak to send  
 yorgun tired  
 yorulmak to be tired  
 yönetim administration  
 yukarı up  
 Yunanistan Greece
- yurt homeland, hostel  
 yuvarlak round  
 yüklenmek to take on, load  
 oneself up with  
 yüksek high  
 yükselmek to rise  
 yürümek to walk  
 yüz hundred; face; cause  
 yüzbaşı captain  
 yüzey surface  
 yüzünden because of  
 zaman time; ~ ~ from time to  
 time  
 zarar harm, damage  
 zarf envelope  
 zaruri obligatory  
 zaten anyway, as a matter of  
 fact  
 zavallı unfortunate, wretched  
 zengin rich  
 ziyade superabundance  
 ziyan loss, disadvantage  
 ziyaret visit  
 zor difficult; compulsion  
 zorunda obliged to (11.4)

## Index

Suffixes are shown only in the forms with vowels e and i, initial consonants c, d and g. So for the suffixes of *baktığı*-, *bakarak*, *kitapta*, *kitapçı* and *kaçkın*, see under *-diği*-, *-erek*-, *-de*-, *-ci* and *-gin* respectively. Suffixes preceded by the buffer letter y are not shown, so look for the suffix of *anlayan* under *-en*.

- ablative case, 20, 54  
 personal participles in, 104  
 postpositions with, 57  
 uses of, 20, 55-7, 104  
 absolute case, 18  
 postpositions with, 46  
 accentuation, 15  
 accusative case, 18  
 address, modes of, 144-5  
 adjectives, 30-31, 75  
 comparison of, 54-5  
 formation of, 148-50  
 indefinite, 84-5  
 names of materials as, 30  
 adverbial forms of the verb, 107-8,  
 129-31  
 adverbs, 49, 56, 69  
 comparison of, 54-5  
 of place, 52-3, 97-8  
 of time, 134-5  
 agglutination, 2  
*a glass of water*, 96-7  
 alphabet, 4-5  
*and*, 48  
 aorist tenses, 64-5  
 uses of, 66  
 apostrophe, 10-11, 16
- Arabic element in Turkish, 2,  
 145-7  
 -arasi, 79  
*arasında*, 78-9  
 article, definite, 18  
 indefinite, 17  
*as soon as*, 67  
 bağ, 45, 79  
*be*, to,  
 infinitive form, 87-8  
 past tense and conditional, 36-7  
 present tense, 24-5  
 -beri, 57, 97-8  
*bir*, 17, 44, 83, 135-6  
 buffer letter, 19  
*bulunmak*, 153  
*buyurmak*, *buyurun*, 90  
 calendar, 71  
*can*, 106-7  
*cannot*, 107  
*case* -, 17, 18-20  
 models, 21  
 summary, 20  
 uses, see under names of cases  
 causative verbs, 111-4, 129

-ce, 49, 140  
 -ceğiz, 141  
 -ci, 60, 68  
 -cik, 140  
 comparison, 54-5  
 compass, 124  
 compound verbs, 58-60  
 conditional, 36-7, 93, 118-20,  
 123-4  
 consonants, 7-11  
 changes in, 13-14, 15  
 cooperative verbs, 108-9  
 courtesies, 90, 144-5, 156-7

-ç, 148

daha, 54, 134  
 -das, 11, 139-40

dates, 71

dative case, 19-20

postpositions with, 70

personal participle in, 105

uses of, 19-20, 48, 69-70, 83,  
 105

days of the week, 55

de, 48-9, 118, 119

-de, see locative

definite article, see article

definite objective case, 18-19

değil, 25-6, 30, 37

demek, 114-16

demonstratives, 46

-den, see ablative

-di, 35

-diğ-, 101-5

-dik (participle), 101

(past tense), 35

-dikçe, 131

-dikleri, 101

-dikten, 130

-dikse, 119

-diler, -dim, 35

-dindi, 92

diminutives, 139-40

-dimse, 119

-din, 35

-dindi, 92

-diniz, 35  
 -dinize, 119  
 -dinse, 119  
 -dir, 24  
 -dir-, 111  
 -dirler, 24  
 -dirt-, 113  
 -diydi, 92  
 diye, 114-15  
 -diyse, 119  
 doğru, 70  
 doublets, 158  
 durmak, 153-4

-e (dative), 19

(adverbial), 129, 153, 154

(subjunctive), 124

each, 61-2

-ebil-, 106-7

-eeğ-, 54-8, 102-4

-ecek, 57, 74-5, 102

-ecekleri, 102

-ecekse, 57

-ecekti, 57

-edur-, 153

-egel-, -ekal, 154

-el-, 128

-eler, 124

-eli, 130

-elim, 124

-eme-, 107

-emez, 107

-emi-, see -eme-

-emiyebil-, 107

en, 54

-en, 73-4

-ene kadar, 129-30

-er (aorist), 64, 74-5

(numeral), 61-2

-er-, 112, 128

-erek, 107-8

-esi, 140

-esin, -esiniz, 124

etmek, 58-9, 145-6, 154

-eyim, 124

falan, falanca, filan, 117

fractions, 60-61  
 future conditional, 57-8  
 future participle, 74-5, 102  
 future-past tense, 57-8  
 future tense, 57-8

gece, 87

gelmek, 154

-gen, 11, 149

gender, 17, 145

genitive case, 19

postpositions with, 46-8

-gi, 149

gibi, 46-7, 76, 88, 154

-gin, 149

girmek, 155

glottal stop, 10-11

greetings, 157-8

-hane, 146

hangı, 77

have to, 38

hep, 84, 85-6

-i (definite object), 18-19

(his/her/its), 27, 136-7

(noun), 149

-i'f (adjective), 147

*I am*, 24

-ici, 140

için, 46-8, 104

idi, idik, idiler, idim, 35

idimse, 119

idın, idiniz, 35

idiyse, 119

*if I am*, 36

iken, 66-7

-il-, 93-4

ila, ilâ, 147

ile, 46-7, 48, 79

-im (*I am*), 24

-im (*my*), 27

imış, 87-8

imişse, 88

-imiz, 27

imperative, 79-80

-inse-, 128-9

-imsi, -imtrak, 141

-in (genitive), 19

(*your*), 27-8

(imperative), 79-80

-in- (reflexive/passive), 93-4

-ince, -inceye kadar/dek, 108

-inci, 60

-inde, 128

indefinite article, see article

-inden, -ime, 28

infinitive, see -mek

-ini, -inin, 28

-iniz (*your*), 27

(imperative), 79-80

ingallah, 58

intensive adjectives, 55

interrogative particle, see mi

-inni, 50

intransitive verbs, see transitive

-ip, 118

-ir, 64-5, 74-5

-ir-, 111-12

ise, 36

-is, 82, 84

-is-, 108-9

-işli, 84

-iştir-, 114

-it-, 111

it's raining, 60

-iver-, 155-6

*I was*, 35

-iyile, 47

-iyor, 24, 42-4

-iyordu, 42-3

-iz, 24

-k, 35-6

kaç, 44, 62, 77, 87, 93, 96

kaçar, 62

kadar, 46-7, 76, 102

kala, 87

kare, 96

karşı, karşın, 70

-ken, 11, 66-7

kendi, 29, 86-7

kendisi, 86-7

kılmak, 59



- ki, 11, 125-7  
 -ki, 11, 53-4  
 kim, 76-7  
 language reform, 2-3, 58, 77, 146, 177  
 -l, 147  
 -le, 47, 48  
 -le-, 127  
 -len-, 128  
 -ler, 17  
 -leri, 27, 28  
 -leş-, 128  
 -leştir-, 129  
 -let-, 129  
 -li, 38-9, 52  
 -lık, 68-9, 147  
 locative case, 20  
 uses of, 20, 97, 105, 108  
 m (prefix), 117  
 -m (my), 27  
 (noun), 150  
 -me (negative), 37  
 (verbal noun), 82-4, 104  
 -meden, 130  
 -mek, 24, 73, 82-3, 98-9  
 -mek için, 83  
 -meklik, 81  
 -meksizim, 131  
 -mektese, 131  
 -meli, 116  
 -mem, 65, 82  
 -meme, -mememe, 82  
 -memelik, 83, 154  
 -meyen, 74  
 -mez, 65  
 -mezlik, 83, 84  
 -mi, 29-30, 37, 44, 77  
 -mış, 74, 87-9  
 -mişmiş, 88  
 -mişiti, 92  
 -miştir, 89  
 -miydi, 44  
 -miyen, see -meyen  
 -miyor, 43  
 -miz, 27  
 money, 95-6  
 months of the year, 71  
 -msi, -mtrak, 141  
 -must, 116-17  
 -n (passive and reflexive), 93-4  
 -n (past and conditional), 35-6  
 (your), 27  
 nationality, nouns of, 34-5  
 -nci, 60  
 ne, 76-7  
 -ne, 146  
 negative, 25-6, 37, 43-4, 105  
 -nin, 19  
 n-inci, 60  
 -niz, 27  
 -niz, 39  
 -niz, 39  
 nominative, 18  
 nouns,  
 compound, 15, 34, 148  
 formation of, 148-50  
 qualifying, 33-5  
 verbal, 73, 82-4  
 numerals,  
 cardinal, 44-5  
 distributive, 61-2  
 fractions, 60-61  
 ordinal, 60  
 olarak, 108  
 olmak, 36, 37, 155  
 ought, 116  
 own, 29  
 participles,  
 aorist, 74-5  
 future, 74-5  
 perfect, 74  
 personal, 101-5, 108  
 present, 73-4  
 passive, 93-5, 109, 114  
 past conditional, 119  
 past tense, 35-6  
 perfect conditional, 93  
 perfect tense, 93  
 Persian element in Turkish, 2, 145-7  
 pluperfect tense, 92  
 plural, 17, 45  
 possessive relationship, 29  
 possessive suffixes, 27-8  
 uses of, 29  
 postpositional expressions, 78-9  
 postpositions, 22  
 with ablative, 57  
 with absolute, 46-8  
 with dative, 70  
 with genitive, 46-8  
 present conditional, 43  
 present-past tense, 42-4  
 present tense, 24, 42-4  
 of *to be*, 24-5  
 pronominal n, 26, 28, 34, 46, 49, 53, 86  
 pronouns,  
 demonstrative, 46  
 indefinite, 84-5  
 personal, 26-7, 86-7  
 punctuation, 16  
 qualifying relationship, 29, 33-5  
 -r, 64, 74-5  
 -ragmen, 70  
 -re, 52-3  
 reciprocal verbs, 108-9  
 reflexive verbs, 93-5  
 -se, -sek, 36-7  
 -se-, 128  
 -sel, 147-8  
 -seler, -sem, -sen, -seniz, 36-7  
 -self, 86-7  
 -seniz, 123  
 -seydi, 120  
 -si, 27, 136-7, 141  
 -sin (imperative), 80  
 (you are), 24, 25, 80  
 singular, 17, 44  
 -sınız, 24  
 -siz, 39  
 -sizin, 131  
 -so-and-so, 117  
 -su, 19, 28  
 subjunctive, 124-5  
 -ş, 108-9  
 -şer, 61-2  
 -ştir-, 114  
 -t-, 111  
 -tane, 45  
 -than, 54  
 -through, 20, 56  
 -time, 87  
 transitive and intransitive verbs, 70  
 -üst, -üstü, -üstü, 78-9  
 -üzere-, 79  
 -üzere, 98-9, 103-4  
 -var, 38  
 -ve, 48  
 verbal nouns, 73, 82-4  
 uses of, 83-4  
 verbs, 24-5, 158-9, 184-5  
 vowel harmony,  
 exceptional, 13  
 general law of, 11  
 special law of, 12  
 of suffixes, 12-13  
 vowels,  
 classification of, 11, 15-16  
 length of, 5, 21  
 weights and measures, 95-6  
 while, 66-7  
 word order, 21-22, 31, 75  
 -y-, 19  
 -yapmak, 154  
 -ydi, 36-7  
 -yemek, 156  
 -yken, 66-7  
 -yle, 47  
 -yınıs, 88  
 -yok, 38  
 -yor, 11, 24, 42-4  
 -yse, 36-7